



## **Z80 Microprocessors**

# **Z80 CPU**

## **User Manual**

UM008011-0816



**Warning:** DO NOT USE THIS PRODUCT IN LIFE SUPPORT SYSTEMS.

---

## **LIFE SUPPORT POLICY**

ZILOG'S PRODUCTS ARE NOT AUTHORIZED FOR USE AS CRITICAL COMPONENTS IN LIFE SUPPORT DEVICES OR SYSTEMS WITHOUT THE EXPRESS PRIOR WRITTEN APPROVAL OF THE PRESIDENT AND GENERAL COUNSEL OF ZILOG CORPORATION.

### **As used herein**

Life support devices or systems are devices which (a) are intended for surgical implant into the body, or (b) support or sustain life and whose failure to perform when properly used in accordance with instructions for use provided in the labeling can be reasonably expected to result in a significant injury to the user. A critical component is any component in a life support device or system whose failure to perform can be reasonably expected to cause the failure of the life support device or system or to affect its safety or effectiveness.

### **Document Disclaimer**

©2016 Zilog, Inc. All rights reserved. Information in this publication concerning the devices, applications, or technology described is intended to suggest possible uses and may be superseded. ZILOG, INC. DOES NOT ASSUME LIABILITY FOR OR PROVIDE A REPRESENTATION OF ACCURACY OF THE INFORMATION, DEVICES, OR TECHNOLOGY DESCRIBED IN THIS DOCUMENT. ZILOG ALSO DOES NOT ASSUME LIABILITY FOR INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY INFRINGEMENT RELATED IN ANY MANNER TO USE OF INFORMATION, DEVICES, OR TECHNOLOGY DESCRIBED HEREIN OR OTHERWISE. The information contained within this document has been verified according to the general principles of electrical and mechanical engineering.

Z80, Z180, Z380 and Z80382 are trademarks or registered trademarks of Zilog, Inc. All other product or service names are the property of their respective owners.

## Revision History

Each instance in the following revision history table reflects a change to this document from its previous version. For more details, refer to the corresponding pages provided in the table.

| Date     | Revision Level | Description  | Page  |
|----------|----------------|--|---|
| Aug 2016 | 11             | Made formatting changes for better readability.  | <a href="#">39</a> , <a href="#">40</a> , <a href="#">41</a>  |
| Aug 2016 | 10             | Added Instruction Notation Summary; corrected typos and errors   | <a href="#">39</a> , <a href="#">42</a> , <a href="#">123</a> , <a href="#">126</a> , <a href="#">136</a> , <a href="#">242</a> ,   |
| May 2016 | 09             | Corrected typos and errors.  | <a href="#">126</a> , <a href="#">132</a> , <a href="#">133</a> , <a href="#">136</a> , <a href="#">141</a> , <a href="#">192</a> , <a href="#">317</a>   |
| Jan 2016 | 08             | Corrected typos and errors.  | <a href="#">46</a> , <a href="#">77</a> , <a href="#">103</a> , <a href="#">112</a> , <a href="#">122</a> , <a href="#">130</a> , <a href="#">132</a> , <a href="#">138</a> , <a href="#">161</a> , <a href="#">207</a> , <a href="#">221</a> , <a href="#">224</a> , <a href="#">227</a> , <a href="#">233</a> , <a href="#">253</a> , <a href="#">255</a> , <a href="#">263</a> , <a href="#">296</a> |
| Jul 2015 | 07             | Corrected typos in <a href="#">POP qq</a> description.   | <a href="#">119</a>   |
| Jul 2014 | 06             | Updated to Zilog style and to incorporate customer suggestions, including a correction to the Z80 Status Indicator Flags table, bit 4, and a correction to the EXX instruction at bit 0. | <a href="#">65</a> , <a href="#">126</a>  |
| Feb 2005 | 05             | Corrected the hex code for the RLCA instruction; corrected illustration for the Rotate and Shift Group RLCA instruction.   | <a href="#">55</a> , <a href="#">205</a>  |
| Dec 2004 | 04             | Corrected discrepancies in the bit patterns for IM 0, IM 1 and IM 2 instructions.  | <a href="#">184</a> , <a href="#">185</a> , <a href="#">186</a>   |



# Table of Contents

|  |      |
|--|------|
| Revision History . . . . .                     | iii  |
| Table of Contents . . . . .                    | v    |
| List of Figures . . . . .                      | xi   |
| List of Tables . . . . .                       | xiii |
| Architectural Overview . . . . .               | 1    |
| CPU Register . . . . .                         | 2    |
| Special-Purpose Registers . . . . .            | 2    |
| General Purpose Registers . . . . .            | 3    |
| Arithmetic Logic Unit . . . . .                | 4    |
| Instruction Register and CPU Control . . . . . | 4    |
| Pin Functions . . . . .                        | 5    |
| Timing . . . . .                               | 7    |
| Instruction Fetch . . . . .                    | 8    |
| Memory Read Or Write . . . . .                 | 9    |
| Input or Output Cycles . . . . .               | 10   |
| Bus Request/Acknowledge Cycle . . . . .        | 11   |
| Interrupt Request/Acknowledge Cycle . . . . .  | 12   |
| Nonmaskable Interrupt Response . . . . .       | 13   |
| HALT Exit . . . . .                            | 14   |
| Power-Down Acknowledge Cycle . . . . .         | 15   |
| Power-Down Release Cycle . . . . .             | 16   |
| Interrupt Response . . . . .                   | 17   |
| Interrupt Enable/Disable . . . . .             | 17   |
| CPU Response . . . . .                         | 19   |
| Hardware and Software Implementation . . . . . | 21   |
| Minimum System Hardware . . . . .              | 21   |
| Adding RAM . . . . .                           | 22   |
| Memory Speed Control . . . . .                 | 23   |
| Interfacing Dynamic Memories . . . . .         | 25   |
| Software Implementation Examples . . . . .     | 26   |
| Specific Z80 Instruction Examples . . . . .    | 27   |
| Programming Task Examples . . . . .            | 29   |
| Z80 CPU Instructions . . . . .                 | 32   |
| Instruction Types . . . . .                    | 32   |

|                                       |    |
|---------------------------------------|----|
| Addressing Modes .....                | 34 |
| Immediate Addressing .....            | 34 |
| Immediate Extended Addressing .....   | 34 |
| Modified Page Zero Addressing .....   | 35 |
| Relative Addressing .....             | 35 |
| Extended Addressing .....             | 36 |
| Indexed Addressing .....              | 36 |
| Register Addressing .....             | 37 |
| Implied Addressing .....              | 37 |
| Register Indirect Addressing .....    | 37 |
| Bit Addressing .....                  | 38 |
| Addressing Mode Combinations .....    | 38 |
| Instruction Notation Summary .....    | 39 |
| Instruction Op Codes .....            | 40 |
| Load and Exchange .....               | 41 |
| Block Transfer and Search .....       | 47 |
| Arithmetic and Logical .....          | 49 |
| Rotate and Shift .....                | 53 |
| Bit Manipulation .....                | 55 |
| Jump, Call, and Return .....          | 58 |
| Input/Output .....                    | 61 |
| CPU Control Group .....               | 63 |
| Z80 Instruction Set .....             | 65 |
| Z80 Assembly Language .....           | 65 |
| Z80 Status Indicator Flags .....      | 65 |
| Carry Flag .....                      | 66 |
| Add/Subtract Flag .....               | 66 |
| Decimal Adjust Accumulator Flag ..... | 67 |
| Parity/Overflow Flag .....            | 67 |
| Half Carry Flag .....                 | 68 |
| Zero Flag .....                       | 68 |
| Sign Flag .....                       | 69 |
| Z80 Instruction Description .....     | 69 |
| LD r, r' .....                        | 71 |
| LD r,n .....                          | 72 |
| LD r, (HL) .....                      | 74 |
| LD r, (IX+d) .....                    | 75 |
| LD r, (IY+d) .....                    | 77 |
| LD (HL), r .....                      | 79 |
| LD (IX+d), r .....                    | 81 |

|              |     |
|--------------|-----|
| LD (IY+d), r | 83  |
| LD (HL), n   | 85  |
| LD (IX+d), n | 86  |
| LD (IY+d), n | 87  |
| LD A, (BC)   | 88  |
| LD A, (DE)   | 89  |
| LD A, (nn)   | 90  |
| LD (BC), A   | 91  |
| LD (DE), A   | 92  |
| LD (nn), A   | 93  |
| LD A, I      | 94  |
| LD A, R      | 95  |
| LD I, A      | 96  |
| LD R, A      | 97  |
| LD dd, nn    | 99  |
| LD IX, nn    | 100 |
| LD IY, nn    | 101 |
| LD HL, (nn)  | 102 |
| LD dd, (nn)  | 103 |
| LD IX, (nn)  | 105 |
| LD IY, (nn)  | 106 |
| LD (nn), HL  | 107 |
| LD (nn), dd  | 108 |
| LD (nn), IX  | 110 |
| LD (nn), IY  | 111 |
| LD SP, HL    | 112 |
| LD SP, IX    | 113 |
| LD SP, IY    | 114 |
| PUSH qq      | 115 |
| PUSH IX      | 117 |
| PUSH IY      | 118 |
| POP qq       | 119 |
| POP IX       | 121 |
| POP IY       | 122 |
| EX DE, HL    | 124 |
| EX AF, AF'   | 125 |
| EXX          | 126 |
| EX (SP), HL  | 127 |
| EX (SP), IX  | 128 |
| EX (SP), IY  | 129 |
| LDI          | 130 |

|                 |     |
|-----------------|-----|
| LDIR            | 132 |
| LDD             | 134 |
| LDDR            | 136 |
| CPI             | 138 |
| CPIR            | 139 |
| CPD             | 141 |
| CPDR            | 142 |
| ADD A, r        | 145 |
| ADD A, n        | 147 |
| ADD A, (HL)     | 148 |
| ADD A, (IX + d) | 149 |
| ADD A, (IY + d) | 150 |
| ADC A, s        | 151 |
| SUB s           | 153 |
| SBC A, s        | 155 |
| AND s           | 157 |
| OR s            | 159 |
| XOR s           | 161 |
| CP s            | 163 |
| INC r           | 165 |
| INC (HL)        | 167 |
| INC (IX+d)      | 168 |
| INC (IY+d)      | 169 |
| DEC m           | 170 |
| DAA             | 173 |
| CPL             | 175 |
| NEG             | 176 |
| CCF             | 178 |
| SCF             | 179 |
| NOP             | 180 |
| HALT            | 181 |
| DI              | 182 |
| EI              | 183 |
| IM 0            | 184 |
| IM 1            | 185 |
| IM 2            | 186 |
| ADD HL, ss      | 188 |
| ADC HL, ss      | 190 |
| SBC HL, ss      | 192 |
| ADD IX, pp      | 194 |
| ADD IY, rr      | 196 |



|               |     |
|---------------|-----|
| INC ss        | 198 |
| INC IX        | 199 |
| INC IY        | 200 |
| DEC ss        | 201 |
| DEC IX        | 202 |
| DEC IY        | 203 |
| RLCA          | 205 |
| RLA           | 207 |
| RRCA          | 209 |
| RRA           | 211 |
| RLC r         | 213 |
| RLC (HL)      | 215 |
| RLC (IX+d)    | 217 |
| RLC (IY+d)    | 219 |
| RL m          | 221 |
| RRC m         | 224 |
| RR m          | 227 |
| SLA m         | 230 |
| SRA m         | 233 |
| SRL m         | 236 |
| RLD           | 238 |
| RRD           | 240 |
| BIT b, r      | 243 |
| BIT b, (HL)   | 245 |
| BIT b, (IX+d) | 247 |
| BIT b, (IY+d) | 249 |
| SET b, r      | 251 |
| SET b, (HL)   | 253 |
| SET b, (IX+d) | 255 |
| SET b, (IY+d) | 257 |
| RES b, m      | 259 |
| JP mn         | 262 |
| JP cc, nn     | 263 |
| JR e          | 265 |
| JR C, e       | 267 |
| JR NC, e      | 269 |
| JR Z, e       | 271 |
| JR NZ, e      | 273 |
| JP (HL)       | 275 |
| JP (IX)       | 276 |
| JP (IY)       | 277 |

|                  |     |
|------------------|-----|
| DJNZ, e          | 278 |
| CALL mn          | 281 |
| CALL cc, nn      | 283 |
| RET              | 285 |
| RET cc           | 286 |
| RETI             | 288 |
| RETN             | 290 |
| RST p            | 292 |
| IN A, (n)        | 295 |
| IN r (C)         | 296 |
| INI              | 298 |
| INIR             | 300 |
| IND              | 302 |
| INDR             | 304 |
| OUT (n), A       | 306 |
| OUT (C), r       | 307 |
| OUTI             | 309 |
| OTIR             | 311 |
| OUTD             | 313 |
| OTDR             | 315 |
| Customer Support | 317 |

## List of Figures

|            |   |    |
|------------|---|----|
| Figure 1.  | Z80 CPU Block Diagram                     | 1  |
| Figure 2.  | CPU Register Configuration                | 2  |
| Figure 3.  | Z80 CPU I/O Pin Configuration             | 5  |
| Figure 4.  | Basic CPU Timing Example                  | 8  |
| Figure 5.  | Instruction Op Code Fetch                 | 9  |
| Figure 6.  | Memory Read or Write Cycle                | 10 |
| Figure 7.  | Input or Output Cycles                    | 11 |
| Figure 8.  | Bus Request/Acknowledge Cycle             | 12 |
| Figure 9.  | Interrupt Request/Acknowledge Cycle       | 13 |
| Figure 10. | Nonmaskable Interrupt Request Operation   | 14 |
| Figure 11. | HALT Exit                                 | 15 |
| Figure 12. | Power-Down Acknowledge                    | 15 |
| Figure 13. | Power-Down Release Cycle, #1 of 3         | 16 |
| Figure 14. | Power-Down Release Cycle, #2 of 3         | 16 |
| Figure 15. | Power-Down Release Cycle, #3 of 3         | 17 |
| Figure 16. | Interrupt Enable Flip-Flops               | 17 |
| Figure 17. | Mode 2 Interrupt Response Mode            | 20 |
| Figure 18. | Minimum Z80 Computer System               | 21 |
| Figure 19. | ROM and RAM Implementation                | 22 |
| Figure 20. | RAM Memory Space Organization             | 23 |
| Figure 21. | Adding One Wait State to an M1 Cycle      | 24 |
| Figure 22. | Adding One Wait State to Any Memory Cycle | 24 |
| Figure 23. | Interfacing Dynamic RAM Memory Spaces     | 25 |
| Figure 24. | Shifting of BCD Digits/Bytes              | 28 |
| Figure 25. | Immediate Addressing Mode                 | 34 |
| Figure 26. | Immediate Extended Addressing Mode        | 34 |
| Figure 27. | Modified Page Zero Addressing Mode        | 35 |
| Figure 28. | Relative Addressing Mode                  | 35 |

|  |    |
|--|----|
| Figure 29. Extended Addressing Mode . . . . .  | 36 |
| Figure 30. Indexed Addressing Mode . . . . .   | 36 |
| Figure 31. Register Indirect Addressing Mode . . . . .                               | 37 |
| Figure 32. Example of a 3-Byte Load Indexed Instruction Sequence . . . . .           | 43 |
| Figure 33. Example of a 3-Byte Load Extended Instruction Sequence . . . . .          | 44 |
| Figure 34. Example of a 2-Byte Load Immediate Instruction Sequence . . . . .         | 44 |
| Figure 35. Example of a 4-Byte Load Indexed/Immediate Instruction Sequence . . . . . | 44 |
| Figure 36. Example of a 16-Bit Load Operation . . . . .                              | 46 |
| Figure 37. Example of a 2-Byte Load Indexed/Immediate Instruction Sequence . . . . . | 47 |
| Figure 38. Example of an AND Instruction Sequence . . . . .                          | 51 |
| Figure 39. Rotates and Shifts . . . . .  | 54 |
| Figure 40. Example of an Unconditional Jump Sequence . . . . .                       | 58 |
| Figure 41. Mode 2 Interrupt Command . . . . .  | 64 |

## List of Tables

|           |   |    |
|-----------|---|----|
| Table 1.  | Interrupt Enable/Disable, Flip-Flops .....    | 18 |
| Table 2.  | Bubble Listing .....                          | 29 |
| Table 3.  | Multiply Listing .....                        | 31 |
| Table 4.  | Instruction Notation Summary .....            | 39 |
| Table 5.  | Hex, Binary, Decimal Conversion Table .....   | 40 |
| Table 6.  | 8-Bit Load Group LD .....                     | 42 |
| Table 7.  | 16-Bit Load Group LD, PUSH, and POP .....     | 45 |
| Table 8.  | Exchanges EX and EXX .....                    | 47 |
| Table 9.  | Block Transfer Group .....                    | 48 |
| Table 10. | Block Search Group .....                      | 49 |
| Table 11. | 8-Bit Arithmetic and Logic .....              | 50 |
| Table 12. | General-Purpose AF Operation .....            | 51 |
| Table 13. | 16-Bit Arithmetic .....                       | 52 |
| Table 14. | Bit Manipulation Group .....                  | 55 |
| Table 15. | Jump, Call, and Return Group .....            | 59 |
| Table 16. | Example Usage of the DJNZ Instruction .....   | 60 |
| Table 17. | Restart Group .....                           | 61 |
| Table 18. | Input Group .....                             | 62 |
| Table 19. | 8-Bit Arithmetic and Logic .....              | 63 |
| Table 20. | Miscellaneous CPU Control .....               | 64 |
| Table 21. | Flag Register Bit Positions .....             | 65 |
| Table 22. | Flag Definitions .....                        | 66 |
| Table 23. | Half Carry Flag Add/Subtract Operations ..... | 68 |



# Architectural Overview

Zilog's Z80 CPU family of components are fourth-generation enhanced microprocessors with exceptional computational power. They offer higher system throughput and more efficient memory utilization than comparable second and third-generation microprocessors. The speed offerings from 6–20MHz suit a wide range of applications which migrate software. The internal registers contain 208 bits of read/write memory that are accessible to the programmer. These registers include two sets of six general-purpose registers which can be used individually as either 8-bit registers or as 16-bit register pairs. In addition, there are two sets of Accumulator and Flag registers.

The Z80 CPU also contains a Stack Pointer, Program Counter, two index registers, a refresh register, and an interrupt register. The CPU is easy to incorporate into a system because it requires only a single +5V power source. All output signals are fully decoded and timed to control standard memory or peripheral circuits; the Z80 CPU is supported by an extensive family of peripheral controllers.

Figure 1 shows the internal architecture and major elements of the Z80 CPU.

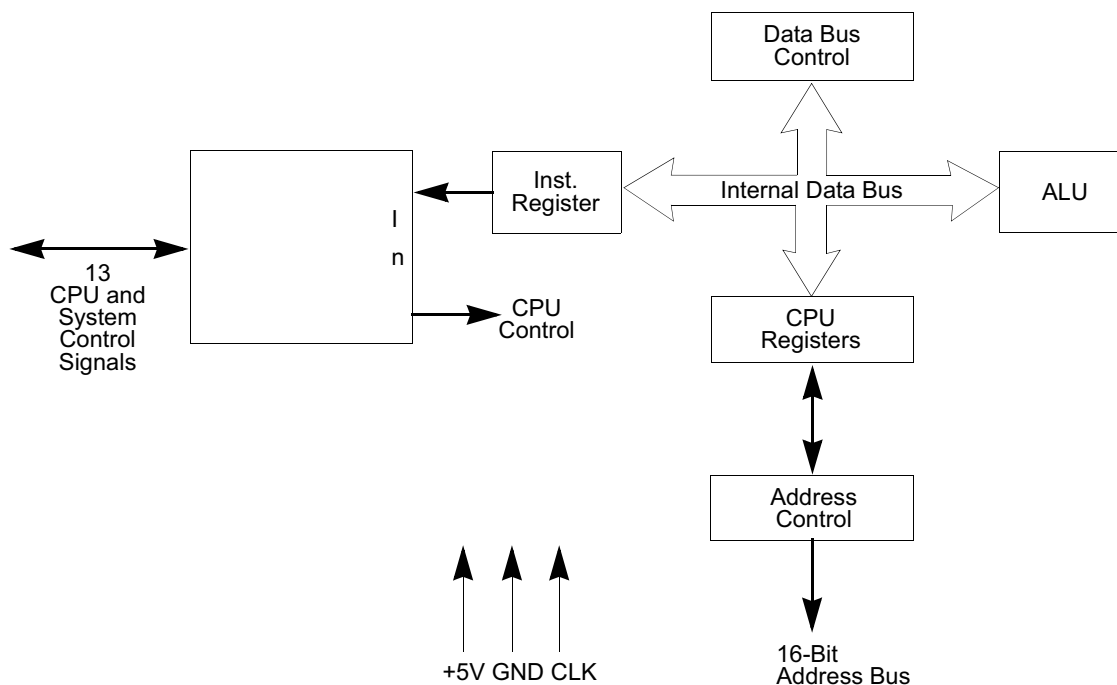


Figure 1. Z80 CPU Block Diagram

## CPU Register

The Z80 CPU contains 208 bits of read/write memory that are available to the programmer. Figure 2 shows how this memory is configured to eighteen 8-bit registers and four 16-bit registers. All Z80 CPU's registers are implemented using static RAM. The registers include two sets of six general-purpose registers that can be used individually as 8-bit registers or in pairs as 16-bit registers. There are also two sets of Accumulator and Flag registers and six special-purpose registers.

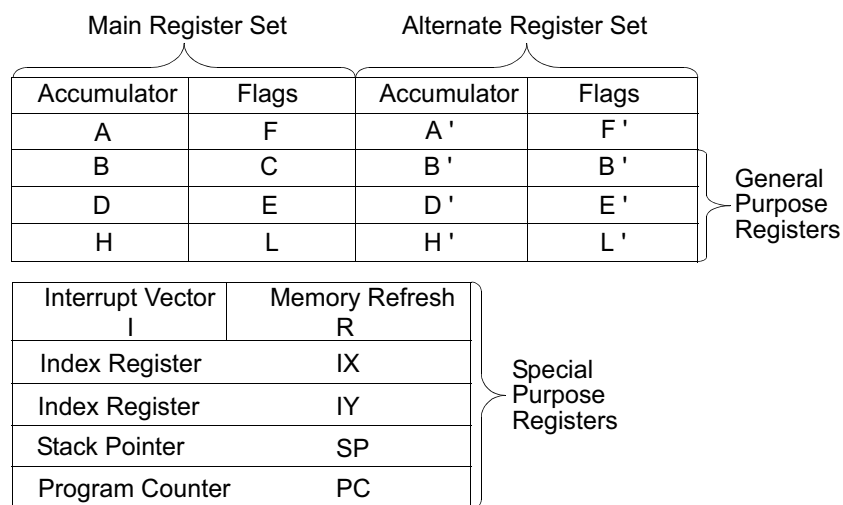


Figure 2. CPU Register Configuration

## Special-Purpose Registers

**Program Counter (PC).** The program counter holds the 16-bit address of the current instruction being fetched from memory. The Program Counter is automatically incremented after its contents are transferred to the address lines. When a program jump occurs, the new value is automatically placed in the Program Counter, overriding the incrementer.

**Stack Pointer (SP).** The stack pointer holds the 16-bit address of the current top of a stack located anywhere in external system RAM memory. The external stack memory is organized as a last-in first-out (LIFO) file. Data can be pushed onto the stack from specific CPU registers or popped off of the stack to specific CPU registers through the execution of PUSH and POP instructions. The data popped from the stack is always the most recent data pushed onto it. The stack allows simple implementation of multiple level interrupts, unlimited subroutine nesting and simplification of many types of data manipulation.



**Two Index Registers (IX and IY).** The two independent index registers hold a 16-bit base address that is used in indexed addressing modes. In this mode, an index register is used as a base to point to a region in memory from which data is to be stored or retrieved. An additional byte is included in indexed instructions to specify a displacement from this base. This displacement is specified as a two's complement signed integer. This mode of addressing greatly simplifies many types of programs, especially when tables of data are used.

**Interrupt Page Address (I) Register.** The Z80 CPU can be operated in a mode in which an indirect call to any memory location can be achieved in response to an interrupt. The I register is used for this purpose and stores the high-order eight bits of the indirect address while the interrupting device provides the lower eight bits of the address. This feature allows interrupt routines to be dynamically located anywhere in memory with minimal access time to the routine.

**Memory Refresh (R) Register.** The Z80 CPU contains a memory refresh counter, enabling dynamic memories to be used with the same ease as static memories. Seven bits of this 8-bit register are automatically incremented after each instruction fetch. The eighth bit remains as programmed, resulting from an LD *R, A* instruction. The data in the refresh counter is sent out on the lower portion of the address bus along with a refresh control signal while the CPU is decoding and executing the fetched instruction. This mode of refresh is transparent to the programmer and does not slow the CPU operation. The programmer can load the R register for testing purposes, but this register is normally not used by the programmer. During refresh, the contents of the I Register are placed on the upper eight bits of the address bus.

**Accumulator and Flag Registers.** The CPU includes two independent 8-bit Accumulators and associated 8-bit Flag registers. The Accumulator holds the results of 8-bit arithmetic or logical operations while the Flag Register indicates specific conditions for 8-bit or 16-bit operations, such as indicating whether or not the result of an operation is equal to 0. The programmer selects the Accumulator and flag pair with a single exchange instruction so that it is possible to work with either pair.

## General Purpose Registers

Two matched sets of general-purpose registers, each set containing six 8-bit registers, can be used individually as 8-bit registers or as 16-bit register pairs. One set is called *BC, DE*, and *HL* while the complementary set is called *BC', DE',* and *HL'*. At any one time, the programmer can select either set of registers to work through a single exchange command for the entire set. In systems that require fast interrupt response, one set of general-purpose registers and an Accumulator/Flag Register can be reserved for handling this fast routine. One exchange command is executed to switch routines. This process greatly reduces interrupt service time by eliminating the requirement for saving and retrieving register contents in the external stack during interrupt or subroutine processing. These general-purpose reg-

isters are used for a wide range of applications. They also simplify programing, specifically in ROM-based systems in which little external read/write memory is available.

## Arithmetic Logic Unit

The 8-bit arithmetic and logical instructions of the CPU are executed in the Arithmetic Logic Unit (ALU). Internally, the ALU communicates with the registers and the external data bus by using the internal data bus. Functions performed by the ALU include:

- Add
- Subtract
- Logical AND
- Logical OR
- Logical exclusive OR
- Compare
- Left or right shifts or rotates (arithmetic and logical)
- Increment
- Decrement
- Set bit
- Reset bit
- Test bit

## Instruction Register and CPU Control

As each instruction is fetched from memory, it is placed in the Instruction Register and decoded. The control sections performs this function and then generates and supplies the control signals necessary to read or write data from or to the registers, control the ALU, and provide required external control signals.

## Pin Description

The Z80 CPU I/O pins are shown in Figure 3. The function of each pin is described in the section that follows.

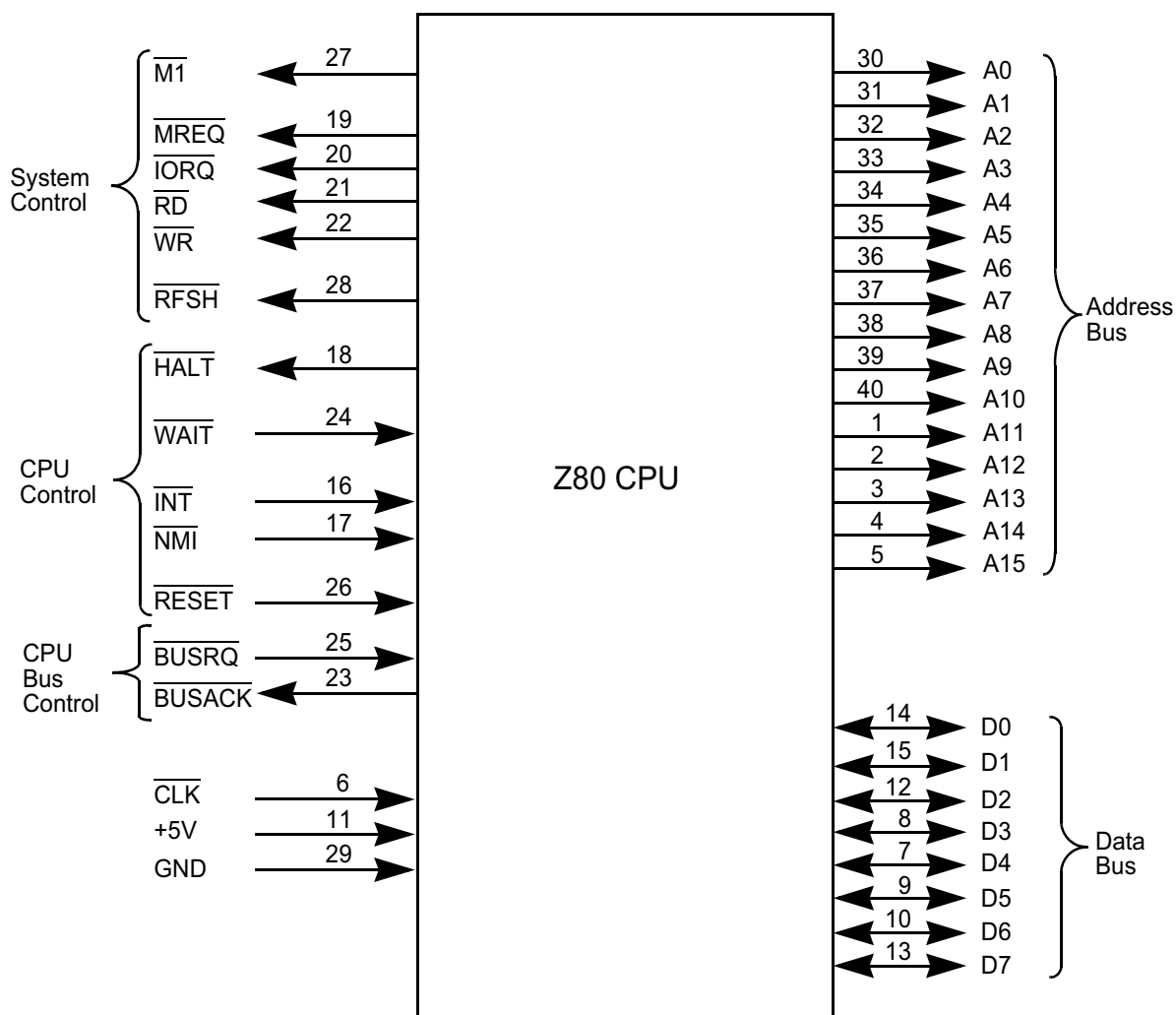


Figure 3. Z80 CPU I/O Pin Configuration

## Pin Functions

**A15–A0.** *Address Bus (output, active High, tristate).* A15–A0 form a 16-bit Address Bus, which provides the addresses for memory data bus exchanges (up to 64KB) and for I/O device exchanges.

**BUSACK.** *Bus Acknowledge (output, active Low).* Bus Acknowledge indicates to the requesting device that the CPU address bus, data bus, and control signals  $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ ,  $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$ ,

$\overline{RD}$ , and  $\overline{WR}$  have entered their high-impedance states. The external circuitry can now control these lines.

**BUSREQ.** *Bus Request (input, active Low).* Bus Request contains a higher priority than  $\overline{NMI}$  and is always recognized at the end of the current machine cycle.  $\overline{BUSREQ}$  forces the CPU address bus, data bus, and control signals  $\overline{MREQ}$ ,  $\overline{IORQ}$ ,  $\overline{RD}$ , and  $\overline{WR}$  to enter a high-impedance state so that other devices can control these lines.  $\overline{BUSREQ}$  is normally *wired OR* and requires an external pull-up for these applications. Extended  $\overline{BUSREQ}$  periods due to extensive DMA operations can prevent the CPU from properly refreshing dynamic RAM.

**D7–D0.** *Data Bus (input/output, active High, tristate).* D7–D0 constitute an 8-bit bidirectional data bus, used for data exchanges with memory and I/O.

**HALT.** *HALT State (output, active Low).*  $\overline{HALT}$  indicates that the CPU has executed a HALT instruction and is waiting for either a nonmaskable or a maskable interrupt (with the mask enabled) before operation can resume. During HALT, the CPU executes NOPs to maintain memory refreshes.

**INT.** *Interrupt Request (input, active Low).* An Interrupt Request is generated by I/O devices. The CPU honors a request at the end of the current instruction if the internal software-controlled interrupt enable flip-flop (IFF) is enabled.  $\overline{INT}$  is normally wired-OR and requires an external pull-up for these applications.

**IORQ.** *Input/Output Request (output, active Low, tristate).*  $\overline{IORQ}$  indicates that the lower half of the address bus holds a valid I/O address for an I/O read or write operation.  $\overline{IORQ}$  is also generated concurrently with  $\overline{MI}$  during an interrupt acknowledge cycle to indicate that an interrupt response vector can be placed on the data bus.

**M1.** *Machine Cycle One (output, active Low).*  $\overline{M1}$ , together with  $\overline{MREQ}$ , indicates that the current machine cycle is the op code fetch cycle of an instruction execution.  $\overline{M1}$ , when operating together with  $\overline{IORQ}$ , indicates an interrupt acknowledge cycle.

**MREQ.** *Memory Request (output, active Low, tristate).*  $\overline{MREQ}$  indicates that the address bus holds a valid address for a memory read or a memory write operation.

**NMI.** *Nonmaskable Interrupt (input, negative edge-triggered).*  $\overline{NMI}$  contains a higher priority than  $\overline{INT}$ .  $\overline{NMI}$  is always recognized at the end of the current instruction, independent of the status of the interrupt enable flip-flop, and automatically forces the CPU to restart at location 0066h.

**RD.** *Read (output, active Low, tristate).*  $\overline{RD}$  indicates that the CPU wants to read data from memory or an I/O device. The addressed I/O device or memory should use this signal to gate data onto the CPU data bus.

**RESET.** *Reset (input, active Low).*  $\overline{RESET}$  initializes the CPU as follows: it resets the interrupt enable flip-flop, clears the Program Counter and registers I and R, and sets the interrupt status to Mode 0. During reset time, the address and data bus enter a high-impedance state, and all control output signals enter an inactive state.  $\overline{RESET}$  must be active for a minimum of three full clock cycles before a reset operation is complete.

**RFSH.** *Refresh (output, active Low).*  $\overline{\text{RFSH}}$ , together with  $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ , indicates that the lower seven bits of the system's address bus can be used as a refresh address to the system's dynamic memories.

**WAIT.** *WAIT (input, active Low).*  $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$  communicates to the CPU that the addressed memory or I/O devices are not ready for a data transfer. The CPU continues to enter a  $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$  state as long as this signal is active. Extended  $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$  periods can prevent the CPU from properly refreshing dynamic memory.

**WR.** *Write (output, active Low, tristate).*  $\overline{\text{WR}}$  indicates that the CPU data bus contains valid data to be stored at the addressed memory or I/O location.

**CLK.** *Clock (input).* Single-phase MOS-level clock.

---

► **Note:** All signals with an overline are active Low. For example,  $\text{B}/\overline{\text{W}}$ , in which *word* is active Low, or  $\overline{\text{B}}/\text{W}$ , in which *byte* is active Low.

---

## Timing

The Z80 CPU executes instructions by stepping through a precise set of basic operations. These operations include:

- Memory read or write
- I/O device read or write
- Interrupt acknowledge

All instructions are a series of basic operations. Each of these operations can take from three to six clock periods to complete, or they can be lengthened to synchronize the CPU to the speed of external devices. These clock periods are referred to as time (T) cycles, and the operations are referred to as machine (M) cycles. Figure 4 shows how a typical instruction is a series of specific M and T cycles. In Figure 4, this instruction consists of the three machine cycles M1, M2, and M3. The first machine cycle of any instruction is a fetch cycle that is four, five, or six T cycles long (unless lengthened by the WAIT signal, which is described in the next section). The fetch cycle (M1) is used to fetch the op code of the next instruction to be executed. Subsequent machine cycles move data between the CPU and memory or I/O devices, and they can feature anywhere from three to five T cycles (again, they can be lengthened by wait states to synchronize external devices to the CPU). The following paragraphs describe the timing which occurs within any of the basic machine cycles.

During T2 and every subsequent automatic WAIT state (TW), the CPU samples the WAIT line with the falling edge of the clock. If the WAIT line is active at this time, another

WAIT state is entered during the following cycle. Using this technique, the read can be lengthened to match the access time of any type of memory device. See the [Input or Output Cycles](#) section on page 10 to learn more about the automatic WAIT state.

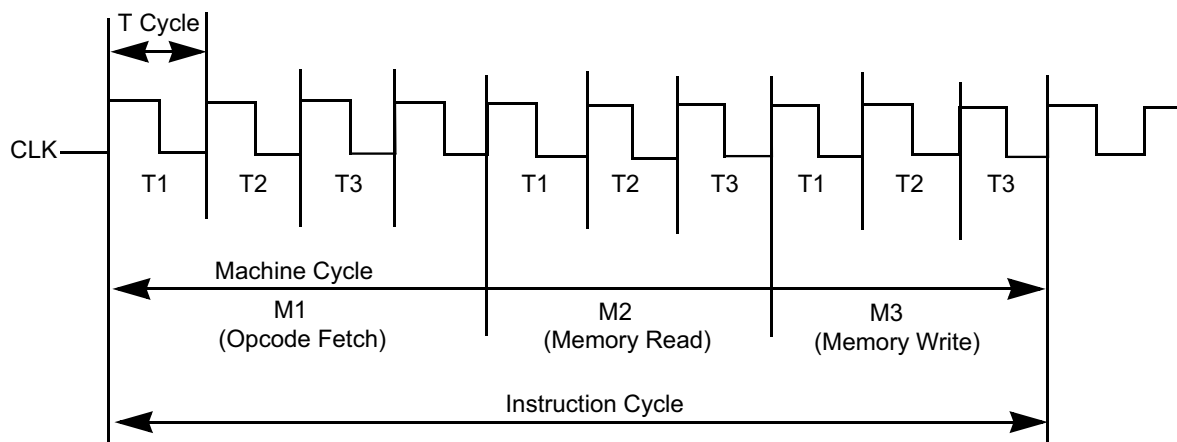


Figure 4. Basic CPU Timing Example

## Instruction Fetch

Figure 5 depicts the timing during an M1 (op code fetch) cycle. The Program Counter is placed on the address bus at the beginning of the M1 cycle. One half clock cycle later, the  $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$  signal goes active. At this time, the address to memory has had time to stabilize so that the falling edge of  $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$  can be used directly as a chip enable clock to dynamic memories. The  $\overline{\text{RD}}$  line also goes active to indicate that the memory read data should be enabled onto the CPU data bus. The CPU samples the data from the memory space on the data bus with the rising edge of the clock of state T3, and this same edge is used by the CPU to turn off the  $\overline{\text{RD}}$  and  $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$  signals. As a result, the data is sampled by the CPU before the  $\overline{\text{RD}}$  signal becomes inactive. Clock states T3 and T4 of a fetch cycle are used to refresh dynamic memories. The CPU uses this time to decode and execute the fetched instruction so that no other concurrent operation can be performed.

During T3 and T4, the lower seven bits of the address bus contain a memory refresh address and the  $\overline{\text{RFSH}}$  signal becomes active, indicating that a refresh read of all dynamic memories must be performed. To prevent data from different memory segments from being gated onto the data bus, an  $\overline{\text{RD}}$  signal is not generated during this refresh period. The  $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$  signal during this refresh period should be used to perform a refresh read of all memory elements. The refresh signal cannot be used by itself, because the refresh address is only guaranteed to be stable during the  $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$  period.

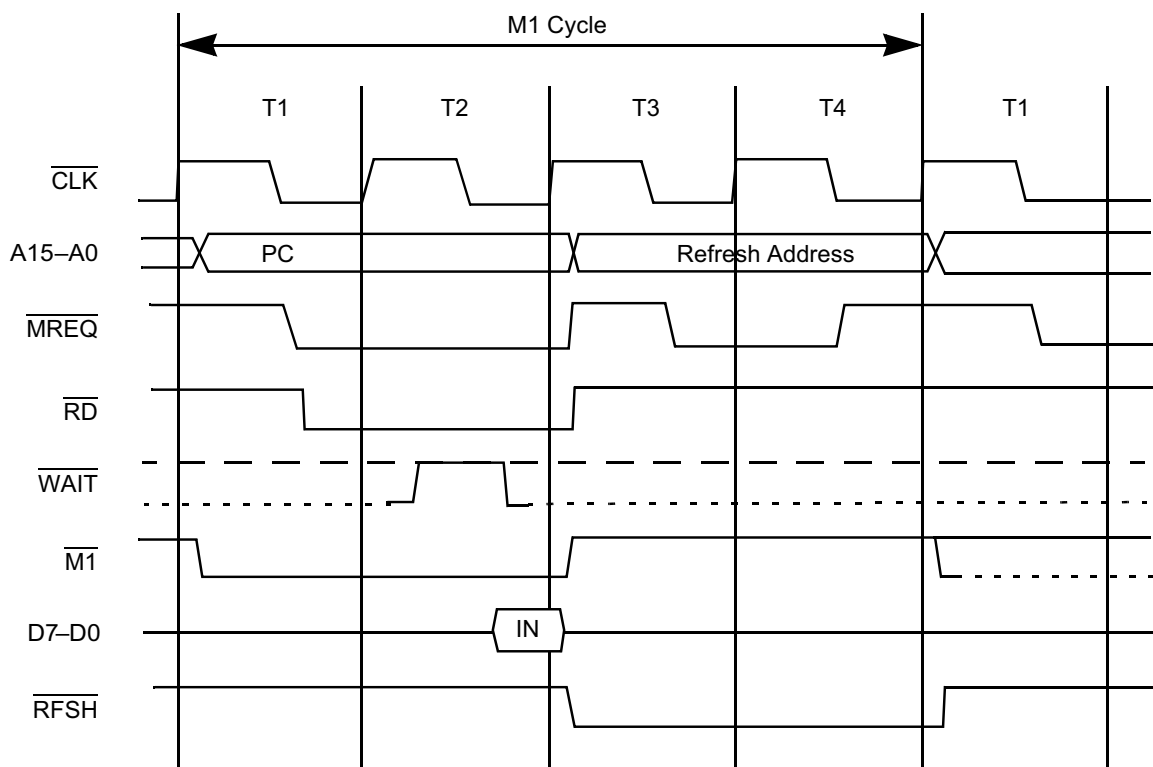


Figure 5. Instruction Op Code Fetch

## Memory Read Or Write

Figure 6 shows the timing of memory read or write cycles other than an op code fetch cycle. These cycles are generally three clock periods long unless wait states are requested by memory through the WAIT signal. The MREQ signal and the RD signal are used the same way as in a fetch cycle. In a memory write cycle, the MREQ also becomes active when the address bus is stable so that it can be used directly as a chip enable for dynamic memories. The WR line is active when the data on the data bus is stable so that it can be used directly as a R/W pulse to virtually any type of semiconductor memory. Furthermore, the WR signal goes inactive one-half T state before the address and data bus contents are changed so that the overlap requirements for almost any type of semiconductor memory type is met.

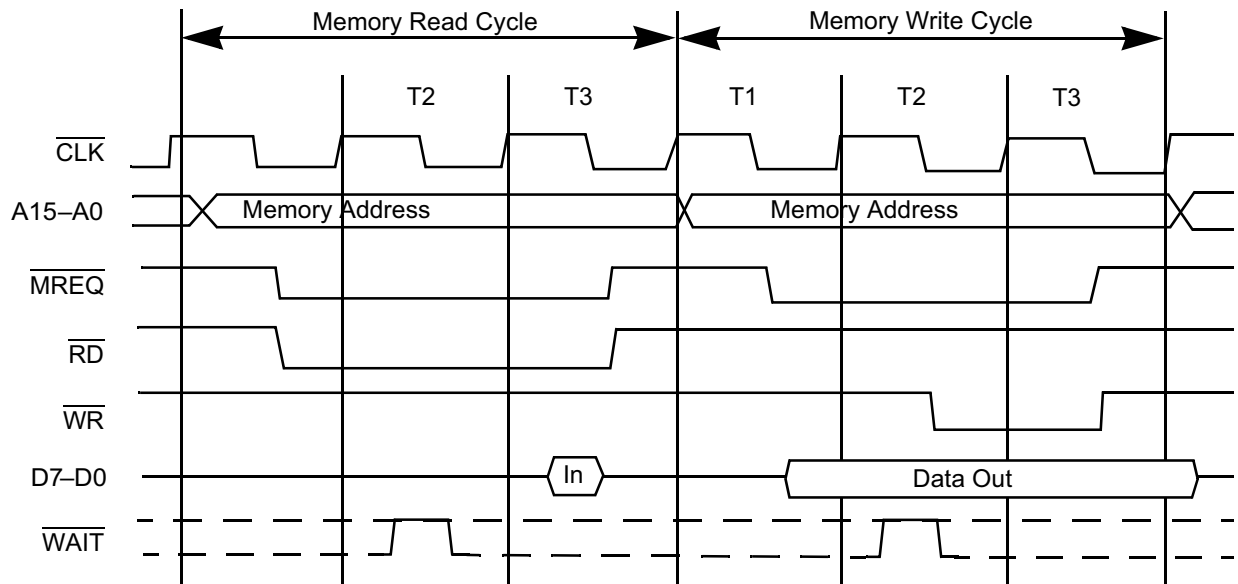


Figure 6. Memory Read or Write Cycle

## Input or Output Cycles

Figure 7 shows an I/O read or I/O write operation. During I/O operations, a single wait state is automatically inserted. The reason for this single wait state insertion is that during I/O operations, the period from when the  $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$  signal goes active until the CPU must sample the  $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$  line is short. Without this extra state, sufficient time does not exist for an I/O port to decode its address and activate the  $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$  line if a wait is required. Additionally, without this wait state, it is difficult to design MOS I/O devices that can operate at full CPU speed. During this wait state period, the  $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$  request signal is sampled.

During a read I/O operation, the  $\overline{\text{RD}}$  line is used to enable the addressed port onto the data bus, just as in the case of a memory read. The  $\overline{\text{WR}}$  line is used as a clock to the I/O port for write operations.



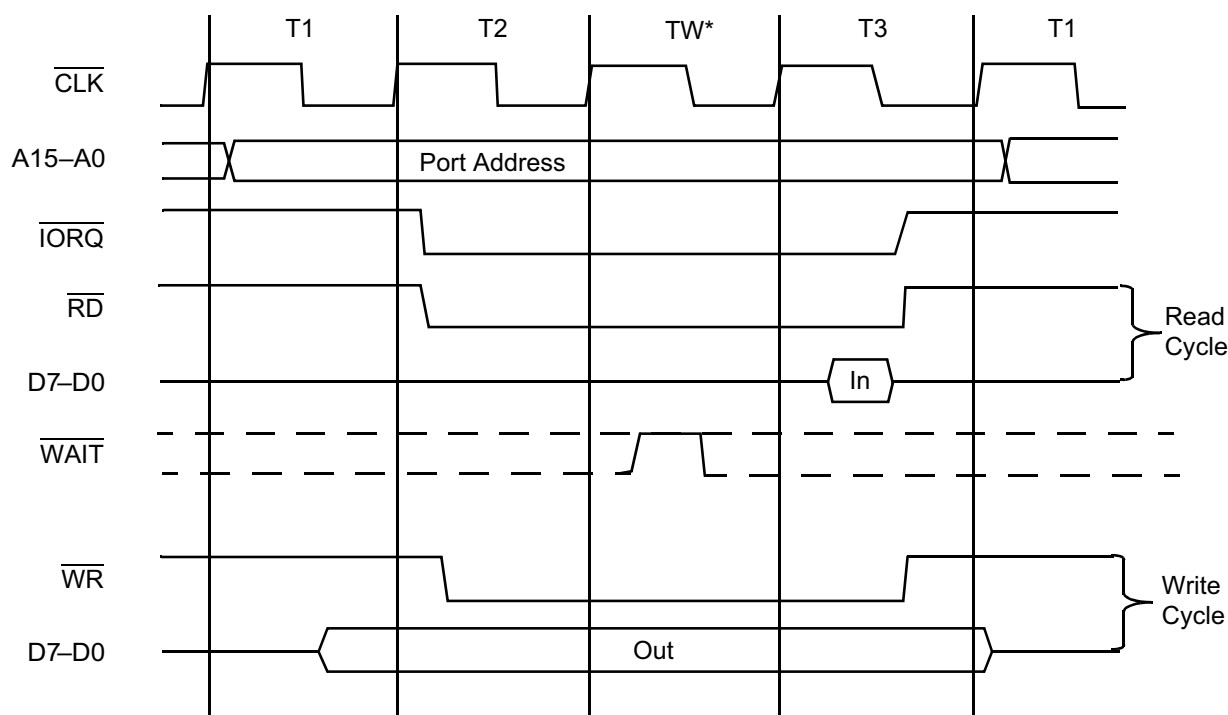


Figure 7. Input or Output Cycles

► **Note:** \*In Figure 7, TW is an automatically-inserted WAIT state.

## Bus Request/Acknowledge Cycle

Figure 8 shows the timing for a Bus Request/Acknowledge cycle. The  $\overline{\text{BUSREQ}}$  signal is sampled by the CPU with the rising edge of the most recent clock period of any machine cycle. If the  $\overline{\text{BUSREQ}}$  signal is active, the CPU sets its address, data, and tristate control signals to the high-impedance state with the rising edge of the next clock pulse. At that time, any external device can control the buses to transfer data between memory and I/O devices. (This operation is generally known as Direct Memory Access [DMA] using cycle stealing.) The maximum time for the CPU to respond to a bus request is the length of a machine cycle and the external controller can maintain control of the bus for as many clock cycles as is required. If long DMA cycles are used, and dynamic memories are used, the external controller also performs the refresh function. This situation only occurs if

large blocks of data are transferred under DMA control. During a bus request cycle, the CPU cannot be interrupted by either an  $\overline{\text{NMI}}$  or an  $\overline{\text{INT}}$  signal.

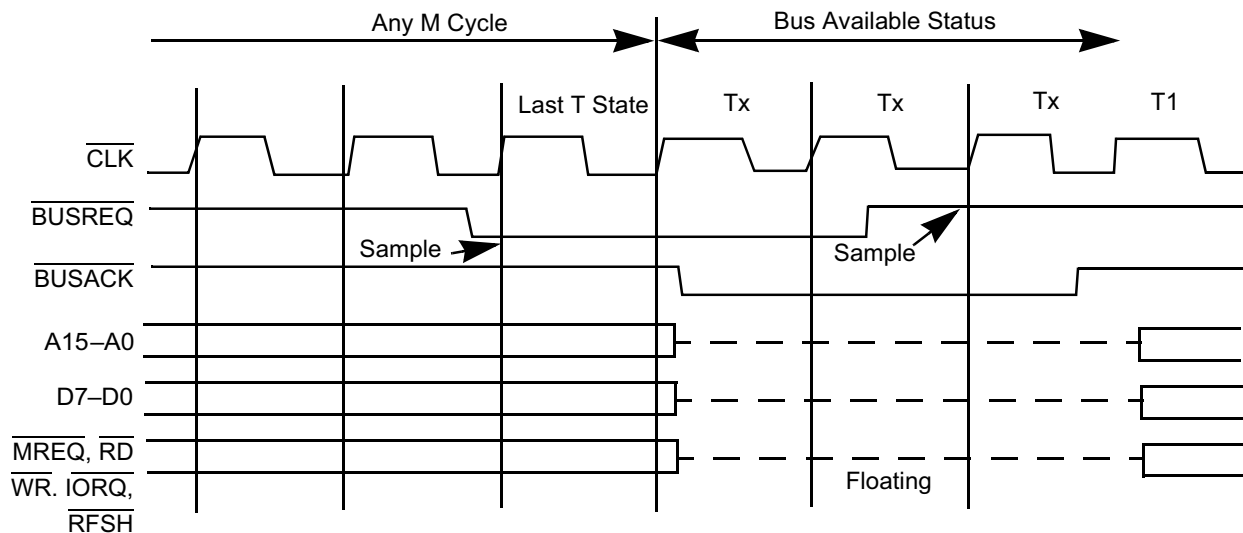


Figure 8. Bus Request/Acknowledge Cycle

## Interrupt Request/Acknowledge Cycle

Figure 9 shows the timing associated with an interrupt cycle. The CPU samples the interrupt signal ( $\overline{\text{INT}}$ ) with the rising edge of the final clock at the end of any instruction. The signal is not accepted if the internal CPU software controlled interrupt enable flip-flop is not set or if the  $\overline{\text{BUSREQ}}$  signal is active. When the signal is accepted, a special M1 cycle is generated. During this special M1 cycle, the  $\overline{\text{IORQ}}$  signal becomes active (instead of the normal  $\overline{\text{MREQ}}$ ) to indicate that the interrupting device can place an 8-bit vector on the data bus. Two wait states are automatically added to this cycle. These states are added so that a ripple priority interrupt scheme can be easily implemented. The two wait states allow sufficient time for the ripple signals to stabilize and identify which I/O device must insert the response vector. Refer to the [Interrupt Response](#) section on page 17 to learn more about how the interrupt response vector is utilized by the CPU.

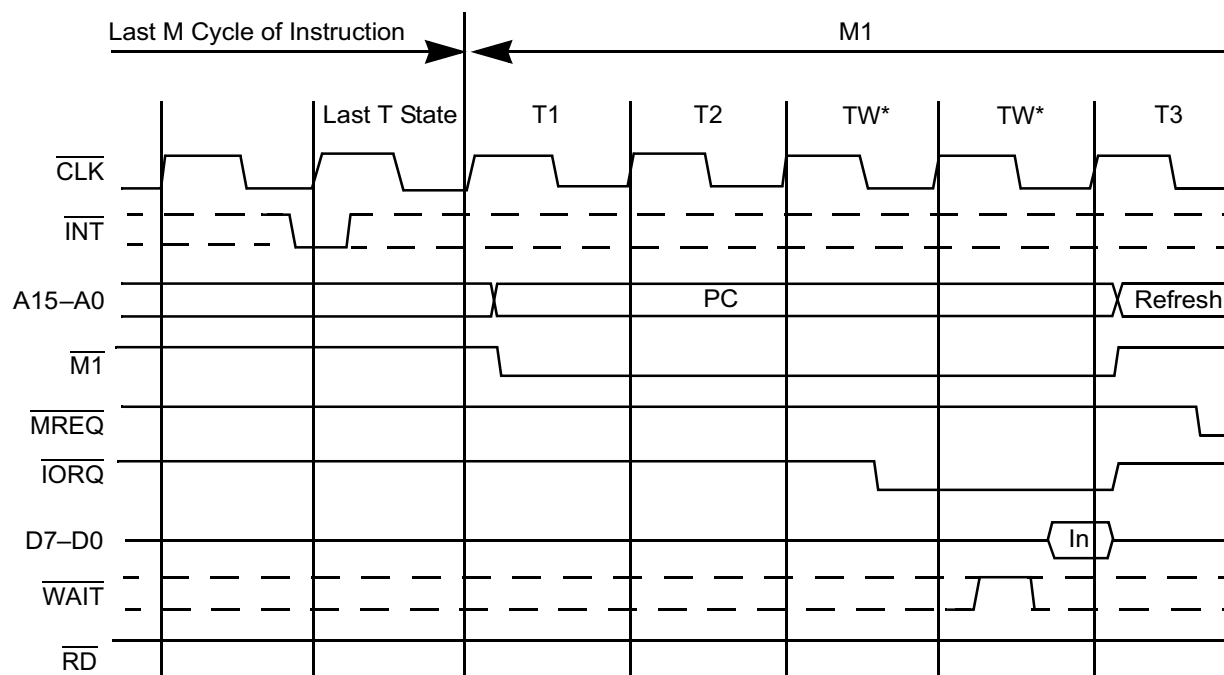


Figure 9. Interrupt Request/Acknowledge Cycle

## Nonmaskable Interrupt Response

Figure 10 shows the request/acknowledge cycle for the nonmaskable interrupt. This signal is sampled at the same time as the interrupt line, but this line takes priority over the normal interrupt and it cannot be disabled under software control. Its usual function is to provide immediate response to important signals such as an impending power failure. The CPU response to a nonmaskable interrupt is similar to a normal memory read operation. The only difference is that the contents of the data bus are ignored while the processor automatically stores the Program Counter in the external stack and jumps to address 0066h. The service routine for the nonmaskable interrupt must begin at this location if this interrupt is used.

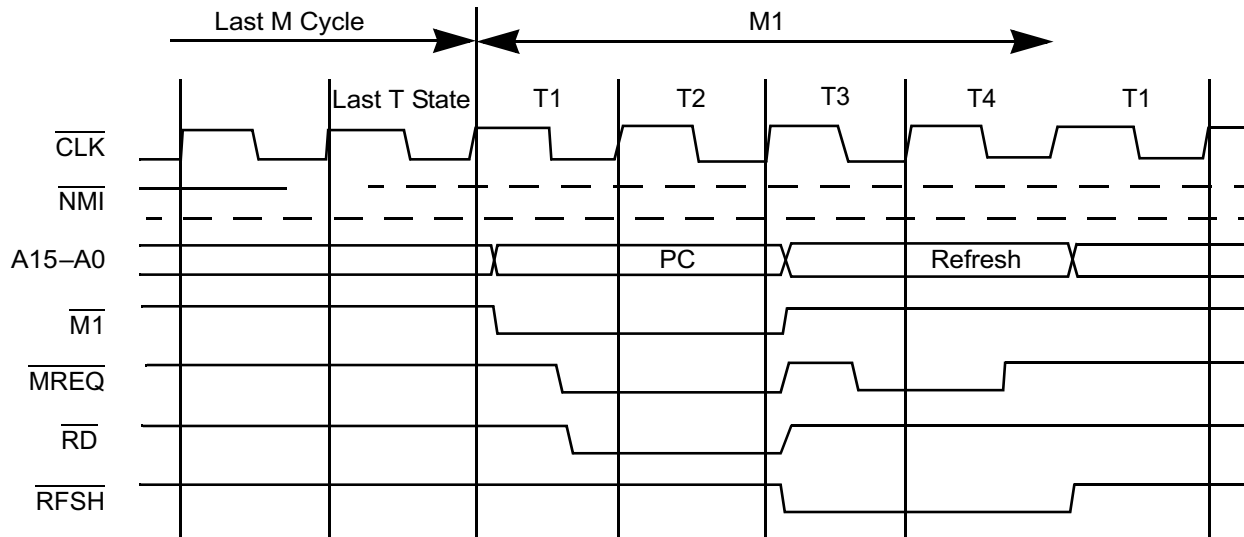


Figure 10. Nonmaskable Interrupt Request Operation

## HALT Exit

When a software HALT instruction is executed, the CPU executes NOPs until an interrupt is received (either a nonmaskable or a maskable interrupt while the interrupt flip-flop is enabled). The two interrupt lines are sampled with the rising clock edge during each T4 state as depicted in Figure 11. If a nonmaskable interrupt is received or a maskable interrupt is received and the interrupt enable flip-flop is set, then the HALT state is exited on the next rising clock edge. The following cycle is an interrupt acknowledge cycle corresponding to the type of interrupt that was received. If both are received at this time, then the nonmaskable interrupt is acknowledged because it is the highest priority. The purpose of executing NOP instructions while in the HALT state is to keep the memory refresh signals active. Each cycle in the HALT state is a normal M1 (fetch) cycle except that the data received from the memory is ignored and an NOP instruction is forced internally to the CPU. The HALT acknowledge signal is active during this time indicating that the processor is in the HALT state.

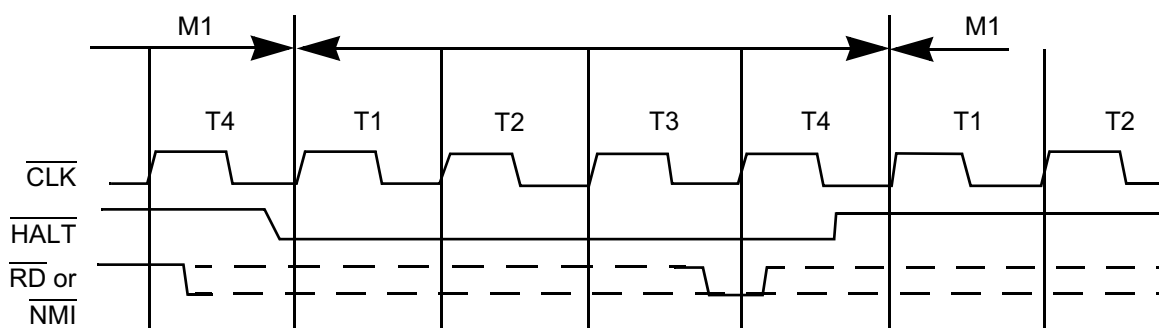


Figure 11. HALT Exit

► **Note:** The HALT instruction is repeated during the memory cycle shown in Figure 11.

## Power-Down Acknowledge Cycle

When the clock input to the Z80 CPU is stopped at either a High or Low level, the Z80 CPU stops its operation and maintains all registers and control signals. However, ICC2 (standby supply current) is guaranteed only when the system clock is stopped at a Low level during T4 of the machine cycle following the execution of the HALT instruction. The timing diagram for the power-down function (when implemented with the HALT instruction) is shown in Figure 12.

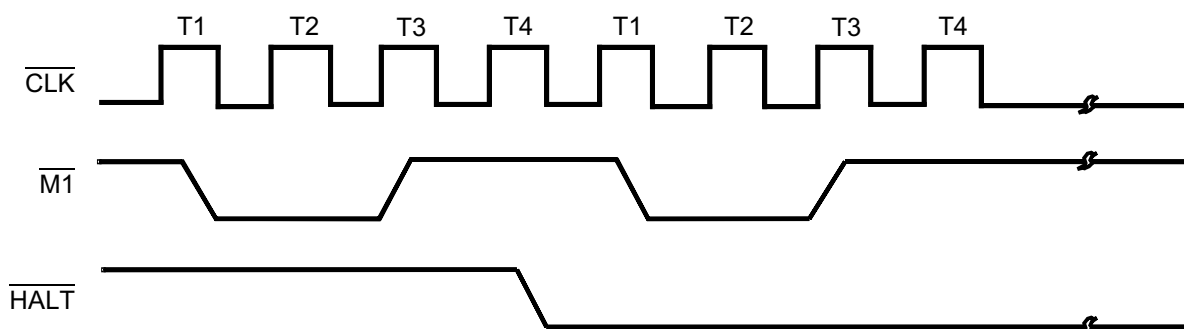


Figure 12. Power-Down Acknowledge

## Power-Down Release Cycle

The system clock must be supplied to the Z80 CPU to release the power-down state. When the system clock is supplied to the CLK input, the Z80 CPU restarts operations from the point at which the power-down state was implemented. The timing diagrams for the release from power-down mode are featured in Figures 13 through 15. When the HALT instruction is executed to enter the power-down state, the Z80 CPU also enters the HALT state. An interrupt signal (either  $\overline{\text{NMI}}$  or ANT) or a  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  signal must be applied to the CPU after the system clock is supplied to release the power-down state.

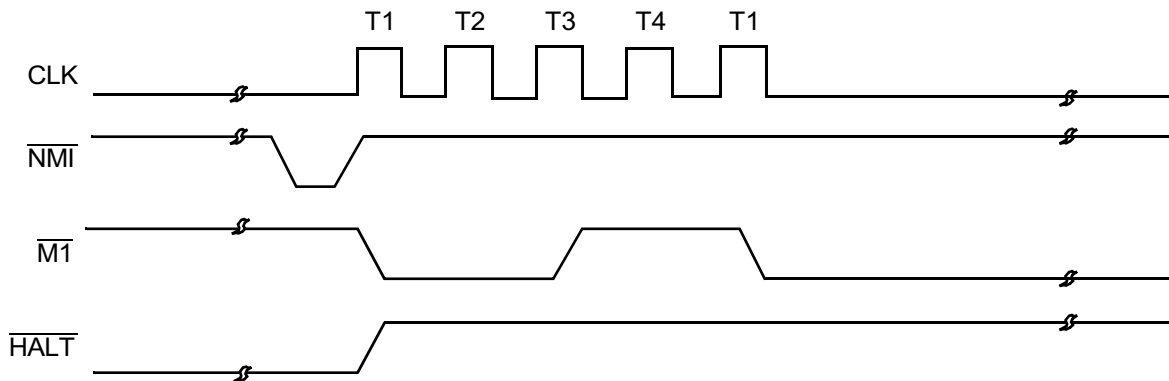


Figure 13. Power-Down Release Cycle, #1 of 3

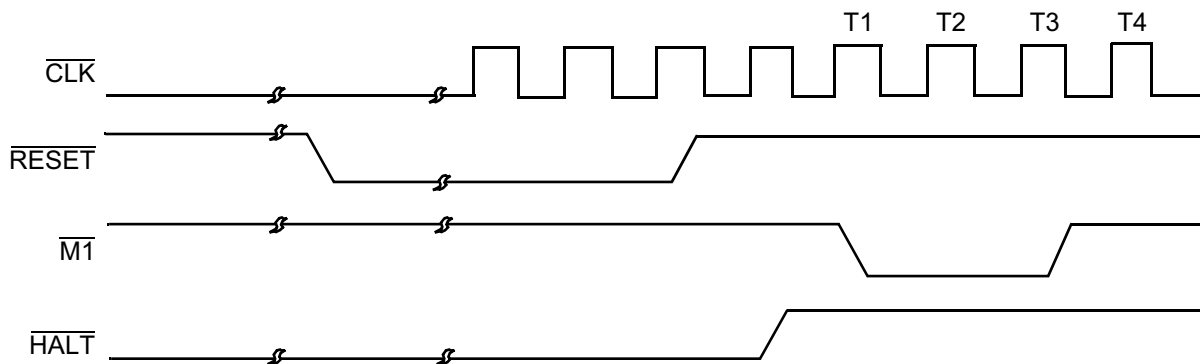


Figure 14. Power-Down Release Cycle, #2 of 3

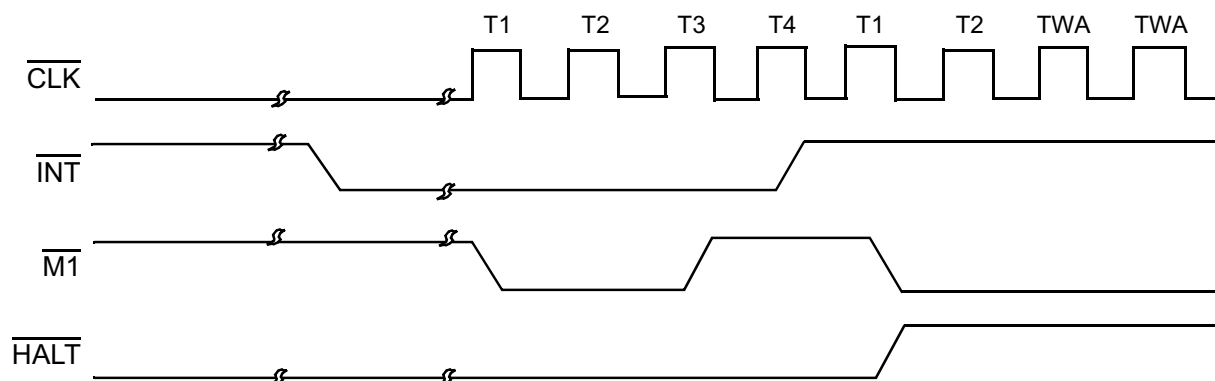


Figure 15. Power-Down Release Cycle, #3 of 3

## Interrupt Response

An interrupt allows peripheral devices to suspend CPU operation and force the CPU to start a peripheral service routine. This service routine usually involves the exchange of data, status, or control information between the CPU and the peripheral. When the service routine is completed, the CPU returns to the operation from which it was interrupted.

## Interrupt Enable/Disable

The Z80 CPU contains two interrupt inputs: a software maskable interrupt ( $\overline{\text{INT}}$ ) and a nonmaskable interrupt ( $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ ). The nonmaskable interrupt cannot be disabled by the programmer and is accepted when a peripheral device requests it. This interrupt is generally reserved for important functions that can be enabled or disabled selectively by the programmer. This routine allows the programmer to disable the interrupt during periods when the program contains timing constraints that won't allow interrupt. In the Z80 CPU, there is an interrupt enable flip-flop (IFF) that is set or reset by the programmer using the Enable Interrupt (EI) and Disable Interrupt (DI) instructions. When the IFF is reset, an interrupt cannot be accepted by the CPU.

The two enable flip-flops are IFF1 and IFF2, as depicted in Figure 16.

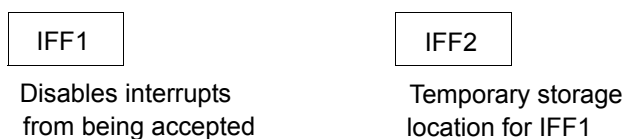


Figure 16. Interrupt Enable Flip-Flops

The state of IFF1 is used to inhibit interrupts while IFF2 is used as a temporary storage location for IFF1.

A CPU reset forces both the IFF1 and IFF2 to the reset state, which disables interrupts. Interrupts can be enabled at any time by an EI instruction from the programmer. When an EI instruction is executed, any pending interrupt request is not accepted until after the instruction following EI is executed. This single instruction delay is necessary when the next instruction is a return instruction. Interrupts are not allowed until a return is completed. The EI instruction sets both IFF1 and IFF2 to the enable state. When the CPU accepts a maskable interrupt, both IFF1 and IFF2 are automatically reset, inhibiting further interrupts until the programmer issues a new EI instruction.

---

► **Note:** For all of the previous cases, IFF1 and IFF2 are always equal.

---

The purpose of IFF2 is to save the status of IFF1 when a nonmaskable interrupt occurs. When a nonmaskable interrupt is accepted, IFF1 resets to prevent further interrupts until reenabled by the programmer. Therefore, after a nonmaskable interrupt is accepted, maskable interrupts are disabled but the previous state of IFF1 is saved so that the complete state of the CPU just prior to the nonmaskable interrupt can be restored at any time. When a Load Register A with Register I (LD A, I) instruction or a Load Register A with Register R (LD A, R) instruction is executed, the state of IFF2 is copied to the parity flag, where it can be tested or stored.

A second method of restoring the status of IFF1 is through the execution of a Return From Nonmaskable Interrupt (RETN) instruction. This instruction indicates that the nonmaskable interrupt service routine is complete and the contents of IFF2 are now copied back into IFF1 so that the status of IFF1 just prior to the acceptance of the nonmaskable interrupt is restored automatically.

Table 1 is a summary of the effect of different instructions on the two enable flip-flops.

**Table 1. Interrupt Enable/Disable, Flip-Flops**

| Action                       | IFF1 | IFF2 | Comments  |
|------------------------------|------|------|---|
| CPU Reset                    | 0    | 0    | Maskable interrupt, $\overline{\text{INT}}$ disabled. |
| DI Instruction Execution     | 0    | 0    | Maskable $\overline{\text{INT}}$ disabled.            |
| EI Instruction Execution     | 1    | 1    | Maskable, $\overline{\text{INT}}$ enabled.            |
| LD A,I Instruction Execution | *    | *    | IFF2 → Parity flag.                                   |
| LD A,R instruction Execution | *    | *    | IFF2 → Parity flag.                                   |



**Table 1. Interrupt Enable/Disable, Flip-Flops (Continued)**

| Action                     | IFF1 | IFF2 | Comments  |
|----------------------------|------|------|---|
| Accept NMI                 | 0    | *    | Maskable → Interrupt.   |
| RETN Instruction Execution | IFF2 | *    | IFF2 → Indicates completion of nonmaskable interrupt service routine. |

## CPU Response

The CPU always accepts a nonmaskable interrupt. When this nonmaskable interrupt is accepted, the CPU ignores the next instruction that it fetches and instead performs a restart at address 0066h. The CPU functions as if it had recycled a restart instruction, but to a location other than one of the eight software restart locations. A restart is merely a call to a specific address in Page 0 of memory.

The CPU can be programmed to respond to the maskable interrupt in any one of three possible modes.

### Mode 0

Mode 0 is similar to the 8080A interrupt response mode. With Mode 0, the interrupting device can place any instruction on the data bus and the CPU executes it. Consequently, the interrupting device provides the next instruction to be executed. Often this response is a restart instruction because the interrupting device is required to supply only a single-byte instruction. Alternatively, any other instruction such as a 3-byte call to any location in memory could be executed.

The number of clock cycles necessary to execute this instruction is two more than the normal number for the instruction. The addition of two clock cycles occurs because the CPU automatically adds two wait states to an Interrupt response cycle to allow sufficient time to implement an external daisy-chain for priority control. [Figures 9 and 10](#) on page 13 show the timing for an interrupt response. After the application of RESET, the CPU automatically enters interrupt Mode 0.

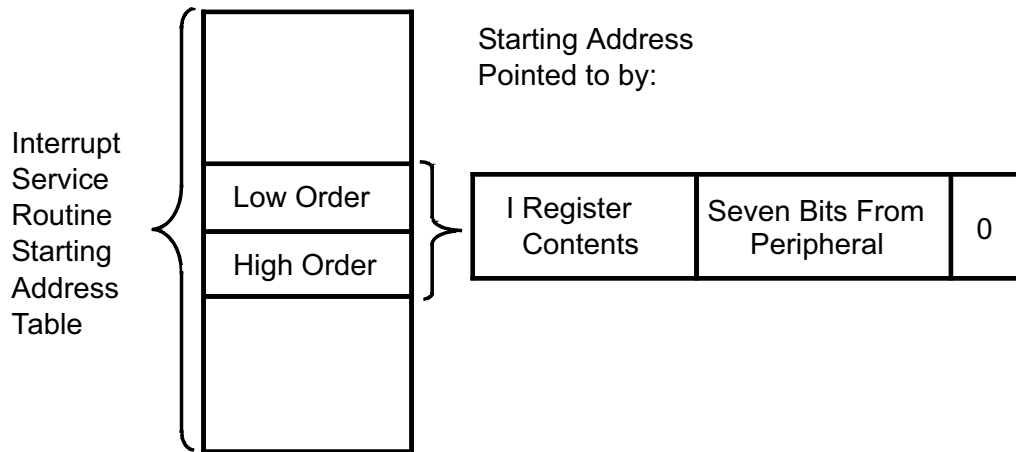
### Mode 1

When Mode 1 is selected by the programmer, the CPU responds to an interrupt by executing a restart at address 0038h. As a result, the response is identical to that of a nonmaskable interrupt except that the call location is 0038h instead of 0066h. The number of cycles required to complete the restart instruction is two more than normal due to the two added wait states.

### Mode 2

Mode 2 is the most powerful interrupt response mode. With a single 8-bit byte from the user, an indirect call can be made to any memory location.

In Mode 2, the programmer maintains a table of 16-bit starting addresses for every interrupt service routine. This table can be located anywhere in memory. When an interrupt is accepted, a 16-bit pointer must be formed to obtain the required interrupt service routine starting address from the table. The upper eight bits of this pointer is formed from the contents of the I Register. The I register must be loaded with the applicable value by the programmer, such as `LD I, A`. A CPU reset clears the I Register so that it is initialized to 0. The lower eight bits of the pointer must be supplied by the interrupting device. Only seven bits are required from the interrupting device, because the least-significant bit must be a 0. This process is required, because the pointer must receive two adjacent bytes to form a complete 16-bit service routine starting address; addresses must always start in even locations.



**Figure 17. Mode 2 Interrupt Response Mode**

The first byte in the table is the least-significant (low-order portion of the address). The programmer must complete the table with the correct addresses before any interrupts are accepted.

The programmer can change the table by storing it in read/write memory, which also allows individual peripherals to be serviced by different service routines.

When the interrupting device supplies the lower portion of the pointer, the CPU automatically pushes the program counter onto the stack, obtains the starting address from the table, and performs a jump to this address. This mode of response requires 19 clock periods to complete (seven to fetch the lower eight bits from the interrupting device, six to save the program counter, and six to obtain the jump address).

The Z80 peripheral devices include a daisy-chain priority interrupt structure that automatically supplies the programmed vector to the CPU during interrupt acknowledge. Refer to the [Z80 CPU Peripherals User Manual \(UM0081\)](#) for more complete information.

## Hardware and Software Implementation

This chapter is an introduction to implementing systems that use the Z80 CPU. Figure 18 shows a simple Z80 system.

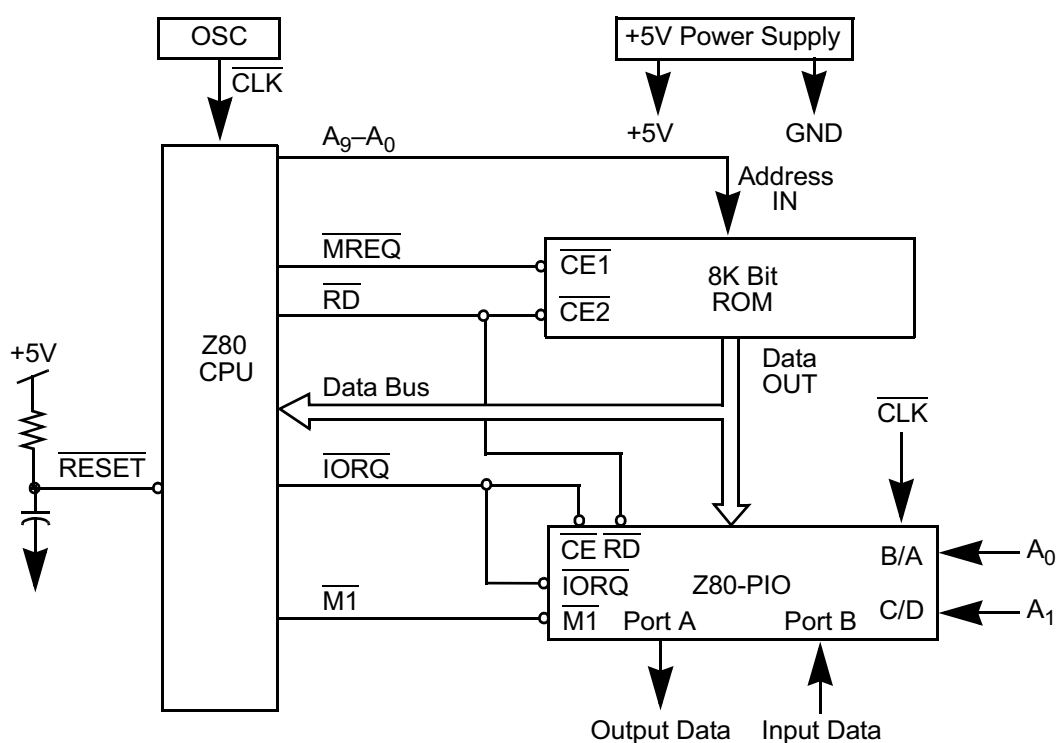


Figure 18. Minimum Z80 Computer System

### Minimum System Hardware

Any Z80 system must include the following hardware elements:

- 5V power supply
- Oscillator
- Memory devices
- I/O circuits
- CPU

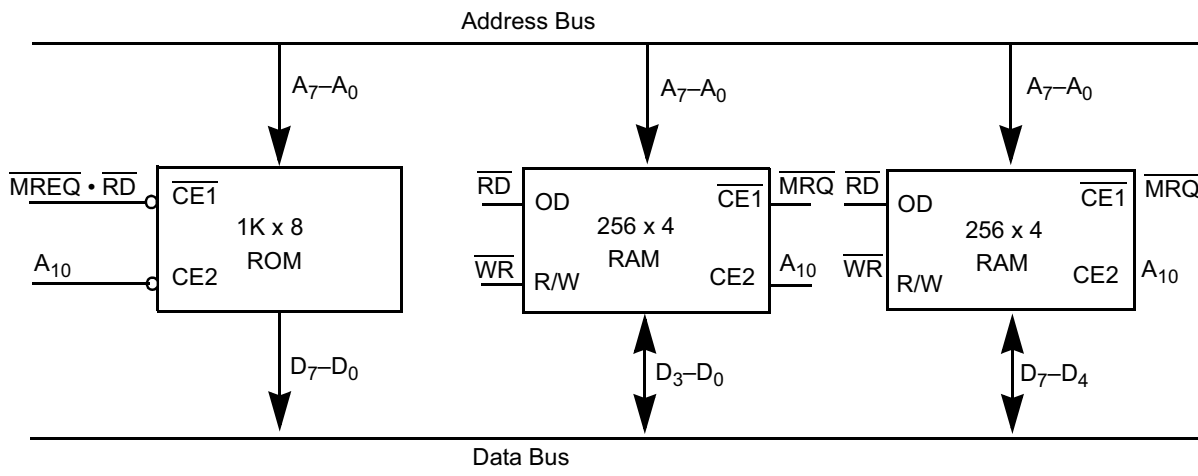
Because the Z80 CPU requires only a single 5V power supply, most small systems can be implemented using only this single supply.

The external memory can be any mixture of standard RAM, ROM, or PROM. In Figure 18, a single 8Kb (1KB) ROM comprises the entire memory system. The Z80 internal register configuration contains sufficient read/write storage, requiring no external RAM memory.

I/O circuits allow computer systems to interface with the external devices. In Figure 18, the output is an 8-bit control vector and the input is an 8-bit status word. The input data can be gated to the data bus using any standard three-state driver while the output data can be latched with any type of standard TTL latch. A Z80 PIO serves as the I/O circuit. This single circuit attaches to the data bus as indicated and provides the required 16 bits of TTL-compatible I/O. Refer to the [Z80 CPU Peripherals User Manual \(UM0081\)](#) to learn more about the operation of this circuit. This powerful computer is built with only three LSI circuits, a simple oscillator, and a single 5V power supply.

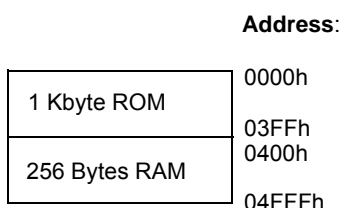
## Adding RAM

Most computer systems require some external read/write memory for data storage and stack implementation. Figure 19 shows how 256 bytes of static memory are added to the example shown in Figure 18.



**Figure 19. ROM and RAM Implementation**

The memory space is assumed to be organized as shown in Figure 20.



**Figure 20. RAM Memory Space Organization**

In Figure 20, the address space is portrayed in hexadecimal notation. Address bit A10 separates the ROM space from the RAM space, allowing this address to be used for the chip select function. For larger amounts of external ROM or RAM, a simple TTL decoder is required to form the chip selects.

## Memory Speed Control

Slow memories can reduce costs for many applications. The  $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$  line on the CPU allows the Z80 to operate with any speed memory. Memory access time requirements, which are covered in the [Memory Read Or Write](#) section on page 9, are most severe during the  $\overline{\text{M1}}$  cycle instruction fetch. All other memory access cycles complete in an additional one half clock cycle. Hence, it is sometimes appropriate to add one wait state to the  $\overline{\text{M1}}$  cycle so slower memories can be used.

Figure 21 is an example of a simple circuit that accomplishes this objective. This circuit can be changed to add a single wait state to any memory access, as indicated in Figure 22.

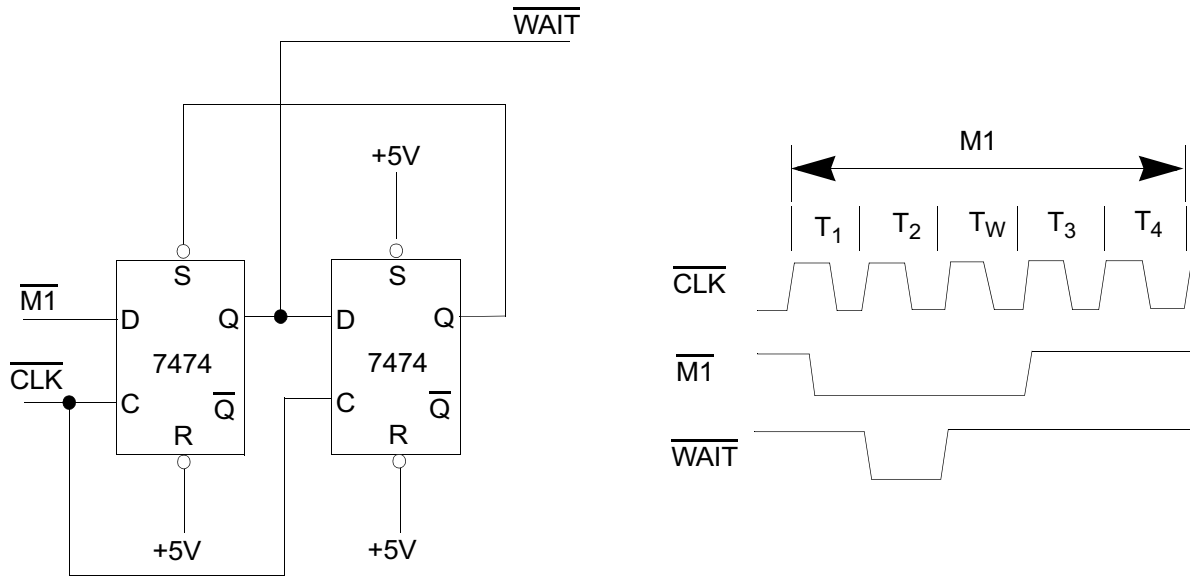


Figure 21. Adding One Wait State to an M1 Cycle

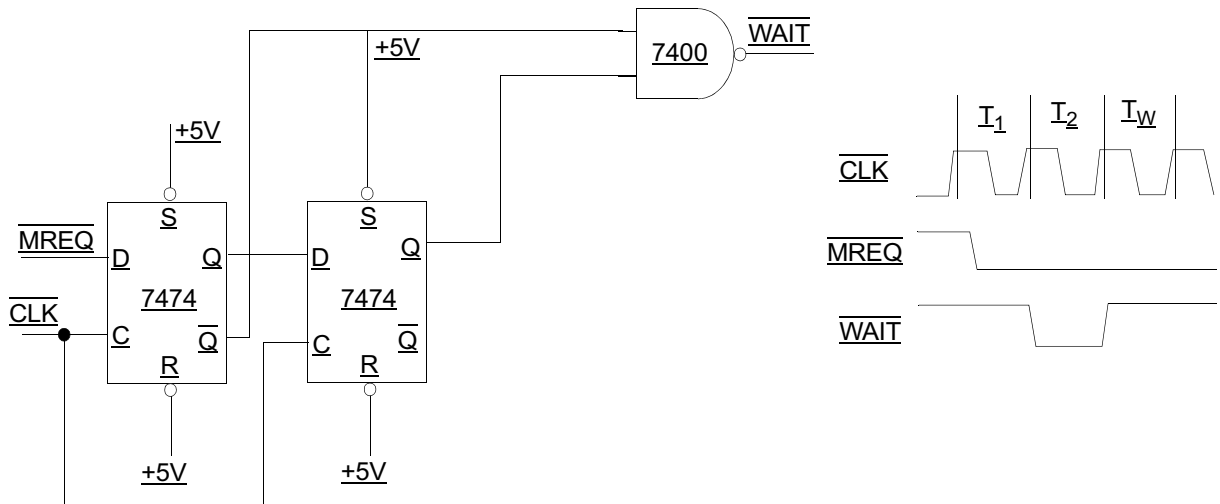


Figure 22. Adding One Wait State to Any Memory Cycle

## Interfacing Dynamic Memories

Each individual dynamic RAM space includes its own specifications that require minor modifications to the examples provided here.

Figure 23 shows the logic necessary to interface 8KB of dynamic RAM using 18-pin 4K dynamic memories. This logic assumes that the RAMs are the only memory in the system so that A12 is used to select between the two pages of memory. During refresh time, all memories in the system must be read. The CPU provides the correct refresh address on lines A0 through A6. When adding more memory to the system, it is necessary to replace only the two gates that operate on A12 with a decoder that operates on all required address bits. Address buffers and data bus buffers are generally required for larger systems.

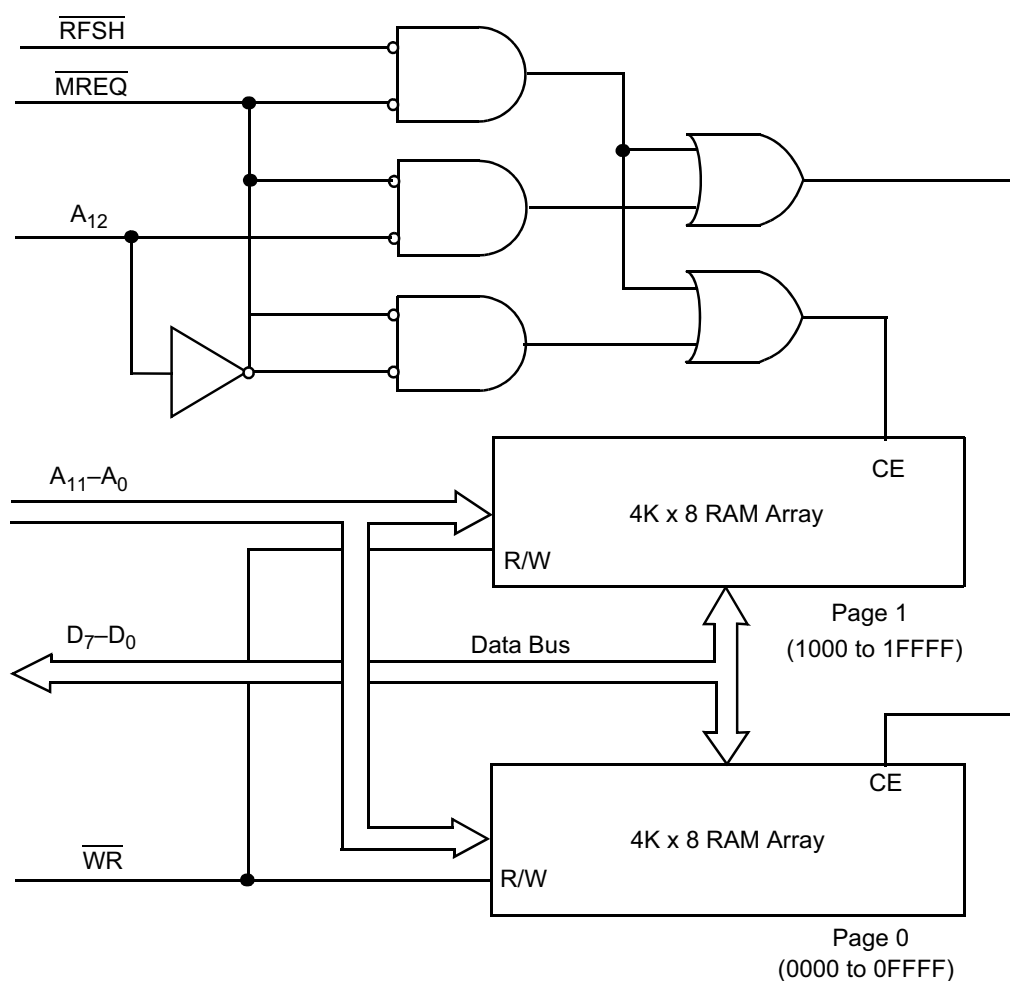


Figure 23. Interfacing Dynamic RAM Memory Spaces

## Software Implementation Examples

The Z80 instruction set provides the user with a large number of operations to control the Z80 CPU. The main alternate and index registers can hold arithmetic and logical operations, form memory addresses, or act as fast-access storage for frequently used data.

Information can be moved directly from register to register, memory to memory, memory to registers, or from registers to memory. In addition, register contents and register/memory contents can be exchanged without using temporary storage. In particular, the contents of main and alternate registers can be completely exchanged by executing only two instructions, EX and EXX. This register exchange procedure can be used to separate the set of working registers from different logical procedures or to expand the set of available registers in a single procedure.

Storage and retrieval of data between pairs of registers and memory can be controlled on a last-in first-out basis through PUSH and POP instructions that utilize a special Stack Pointer (SP) Register. This stack register is available both to manipulate data and to automatically store and retrieve addresses for subroutine linkage. When a subroutine is called, for example, the address following the CALL instruction is placed on the top of the push-down stack pointed to by SP. When a subroutine returns to the calling routine, the address on the top of the stack is used to set the program counter for the address of the next instruction. The stack pointer is adjusted automatically to reflect the current top stack position during PUSH, POP, CALL, and RET instructions. This stack mechanism allows pushdown data stacks and subroutine calls to be nested to any practical depth because the stack area can potentially be as large as memory space.

The sequence of instruction execution can be controlled by six different flags (carry, zero, sign, parity/overflow, add/subtract, half-carry), which reflect the results of arithmetic, logical, shift, and compare instructions. After the execution of an instruction that sets a flag, that flag can be used to control a conditional jump or return instruction. These instructions provide logical control following the manipulation of single bit, 8-bit byte, or 18-bit data quantities.

A full set of logical operations, including AND, OR, XOR (exclusive-OR), CPL (NOR), and NEG (two's complement) are available for Boolean operations between the Accumulator and all other 8-bit registers, memory locations, or immediate operands.

In addition, a full set of arithmetic and logical shifts in both directions are available which operate on the contents of all 8-bit primary registers or directly on any memory location. The carry flag can be included or set by these shift instructions to provide both the testing of shift results and to link register/register or register/memory shift operations.



## Specific Z80 Instruction Examples

### Example 1

When a 737-byte data string in memory location DATA must be moved to location BUFFER, the operation is programmed as follows:

```
LD      HL, DATA      ;START ADDRESS OF DATA STRING
LD      DE, BUFFER     ;START ADDRESS OF TARGET BUFFER
LD      BC, 737        ;LENGTH OF DATA STRING
LDIR                    ;MOVE STRING--TRANSFER MEMORY POINTED
                        ;TO BY HL INTO MEMORY LOCATION POINTED
                        ;TO BY DE INCREMENT HL AND DE,
                        ;DECREMENT BC PROCESS UNTIL BC = 0
```

Eleven bytes are required for this operation and each byte of data is moved in 21 clock cycles.

### Example 2

A string in memory (limited to a maximum length of 132 characters) starting at location DATA is to be moved to another memory location starting at location BUFFER until an ASCII \$ (used as a string delimiter) is found. This operation is performed as follows:

```
LD      HL, DATA      ;STARTING ADDRESS OF DATA STRING
LD      DE, BUFFER     ;STARTING ADDRESS OF TARGET BUFFER
LD      BC, 132        ;MAXIMUM STRING LENGTH
LD      A, '$'         ;STRING DELIMITER CODE
LOOP:   CP (HL)        ;COMPARE MEMORY CONTENTS WITH
                        ;DELIMITER
JR      Z, END-$       ;GO TO END IF CHARACTERS EQUAL
LDI                    ;MOVE CHARACTER (HL) to (DE)
                        ;INCREMENT HL AND DE, DECREMENT BC
JP      PE, LOOP       ;GO TO LOOP IF MORE CHARACTERS
END:    ;OTHERWISE, FALL THROUGH
                        ;NOTE: P/V FLAG IS USED
                        ;TO INDICATE THAT REGISTER BC WAS
                        ;DECREMENTED TO ZERO
```

Nineteen bytes are required for this operation.

### Example 3

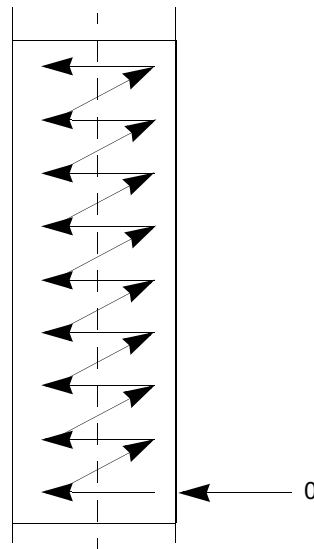
A 16-digit decimal number is shifted as depicted in Figure 24. This shift is performed to mechanize BCD multiplication or division. The 16-digit decimal number is represented in packed BCD format (two BCD digits/byte) The operation is programmed as follows:

```

LD      HL, DATA      ;ADDRESS OF FIRST BYTE
LD      B, COUNT       ;SHIFT COUNT
XOR     A               ;CLEAR ACCUMULATOR
ROTAT:  RLD             ;ROTATE LEFT low-order DIGIT IN ACC
                          ;WITH DIGITS IN (HL)
INC     HL              ;ADVANCE MEMORY POINTER.
DJNZ   ROTAT-$         ;DECREMENT B AND GO TO ROTAT IF
                          ;B IS NOT ZERO, OTHERWISE FALL
                          ;THROUGH

```

Eleven bytes are required for this operation.



**Figure 24. Shifting of BCD Digits/Bytes**

#### Example 4

One number is to be subtracted from another number, both of which exist in packed BCD format and are of equal but varying length. The result is stored in the location of the minuend. The operation is programmed as follows:

```

LD      HL, ARG1       ;ADDRESS OF MINUEND
LD      DE, ARG2       ;ADDRESS OF SUBTRAHEND
LD      B, LENGTH      ;LENGTH OF TWO ARGUMENTS
AND     A               ;CLEAR CARRY FLAG
SUBDEC:LD A, (DE)      ;SUBTRAHEND TO ACC

```

```

SBC      A, (HL)      ;SUBTRACT (HL) FROM ACC
DAA                      ;ADJUST RESULT TO DECIMAL CODED VALUE
LD       (HL), A      ;STORE RESULT
INC      HL           ;ADVANCE MEMORY POINTERS
INC      DE
DJNZ    SUBDEC-$     ;DECREMENT B AND GO TO SUBDEC
                      ;IF B
                      ;NOT ZERO, OTHERWISE FALL
                      ;THROUGH

```

Seventeen bytes are required for this operation.

## Programming Task Examples

As indicated in Table 2, this example program sorts an array of numbers to ascending order, using a standard exchange sorting algorithm. These numbers range from 0 to 255.

**Table 2. Bubble Listing**

| Location | Object Code | Statement | Source Statement                           |
|----------|-------------|-----------|--|
|          |             | 1         | ; standard exchange (bubble) sort routine  |
|          |             | 2         | ;  |
|          |             | 3         | ; at entry: hl contains address of data    |
|          |             | 4         | c contains number of elements to be sorted |
|          |             | 5         | (1 < c < 256)                              |
|          |             | 6         | ;  |
|          |             | 7         | ; at exit data sorted in ascending order   |
|          |             | 8         | ;  |
|          |             | 9         | ; use of registers                         |
|          |             | 10        | ;  |
|          |             | 11        | ; register contents                        |
|          |             | 12        | ;  |
|          |             | 13        | ; a temporary storage for calculations     |
|          |             | 14        | ; b counter for data array                 |
|          |             | 15        | ; c length of data array                   |
|          |             | 16        | ; d first element in comparison            |
|          |             | 17        | ; e second element in comparison           |
|          |             | 18        | ; h flag to indicate exchange              |

**Table 2. Bubble Listing (Continued)**

| Location | Object Code | Statement | Source Statement                               |
|----------|-------------|-----------|--|
|          |             | 19        | ; l unused                                     |
|          |             | 20        | ; ix pointer into data array                   |
|          |             | 21        | ; iy unused                                    |
|          |             | 22        | ;  |
| 0000     | 222600      | 23        | sort: ld (data), hl ; save data address        |
| 0003     | cb84        | 24        | loop: res flag, h ; initialize exchange flag   |
| 0005     | 41          | 25        | ld b, c ; initialize length counter            |
| 0006     | 05          | 26        | dec b ; adjust for testing                     |
| 0007     | dd2a2600    | 27        | ld ix, (data) ; initialize array pointer       |
| 000b     | dd7e00      | 28        | next: ld a, (ix) ; first element in comparison |
| 000e     | 57          | 29        | ld d, a ; temporary storage for element        |
| goof     | dd5e01      | 30        | ld e, (ix+1) ; second element in comparison    |
| 0012     | 93          | 31        | sub e ; comparison first to second             |
| 0013     | 3008        | 32        | jr pc, noex-\$ ; if first > second, no jump    |
| 0015     | dd7300      | 33        | ld (ix), e ; exchange array elements           |
| 0018     | dd7201      | 34        | ld (ix+i), d                                   |
| 001b     | cbc4        | 35        | set flag, h ; record exchange occurred         |
| 0010     | dd23        | 36        | noex: inc ix ; point to next data element      |
| 001f     | 10ea        | 37        | djnz next-\$ ; count number of comparisons     |
|          |             | 38        | ; repeat if more data pairs                    |
| 0021     | cb44        | 39        | bit flag, h ; determine if exchange occurred   |
| 0023     | 20de        | 40        | jr nz, loop-\$ ; continue if data unsorted     |
| 0025     | c9          | 41        | ret ; otherwise, exit                          |
|          |             | 42        | ;  |
| 0026     |             | 43        | flag: equ 0 ; designation of flag bit          |
| 0026     |             | 44        | data: defs 2 ; storage for data address        |
|          |             | 45        | end  |

The program outlined in Table 3 multiplies two unsigned 16-bit integers, leaving the result in the HL register pair.

**Table 3. Multiply Listing**

| Location | Object Code | Statement | Source Statement                              |
|----------|-------------|-----------|---|
| 0000     |             | 1         | mult;; unsigned sixteen bit integer multiply. |
|          |             | 2         | ; on entrance: multiplier in de.              |
|          |             | 3         | ; multiplicand in hl.                         |
|          |             | 4         | ;   |
|          |             | 5         | ; on exit result in hl.                       |
|          |             | 6         | ;   |
|          |             | 7         | ; register uses:                              |
|          |             | 8         | ;   |
|          |             | 9         | ;   |
|          |             | 10        | ; h high-order partial result                 |
|          |             | 11        | ; l low-order partial result                  |
|          |             | 12        | ; d high-order multiplicand                   |
|          |             | 13        | ; e low-order multiplicand                    |
|          |             | 14        | ; b counter for number of shifts              |
|          |             | 15        | ; c high-order bits of multiplier             |
|          |             | 16        | ; a low-order bits of multiplier              |
|          |             | 17        | ;   |
| 0000     | 0610        | 18        | ld b, 16; number of bits-initialize           |
| 0002     | 4a          | 19        | ld c, d; move multiplier                      |
| 0003     | 7b          | 20        | ld a, e;                                      |
| 0004     | eb          | 21        | ex de, hl; move multiplicand                  |
| 0005     | 210000      | 22        | ld hl, 0; clear partial result                |
| 0008     | cb39        | 23        | mloop: srl c; shift multiplier right          |
| 000a     | if          | 24        | rra least-significant bit is                  |
|          |             | 25        | ; in carry.                                   |
| 000b     | 3001        | 26        | jr nc, noadd-;; if no carry, skip the add.    |
| good     | 19          | 27        | add hl, de; else add multiplicand to          |
|          |             | 28        | ; partial result.                             |
| 000e     | eb          | 29        | noadd: ex de, h l; shift multiplicand left    |
| goof     | 29          | 30        | add hl, hl; by multiplying it by two.         |
| 0010     | eb          | 31        | ex de, hl;                                    |
| 0011     | 10f5        | 32        | djnz mloop-;; repeat until no more bits.      |
| 0013     | c9          | 33        | ret;  |
|          |             | 34        | end;  |

## Z80 CPU Instructions

The Z80 CPU can execute 158 different instruction types including all 78 of the 8080A CPU. The instructions fall into these major groups:

- Load and Exchange
- Block Transfer and Search
- Arithmetic and Logical
- Rotate and Shift
- Bit Manipulation (Set, Reset, Test)
- Jump, Call, and Return
- Input/Output
- Basic CPU Control

### Instruction Types

The load instructions move data internally among CPU registers or between CPU registers and external memory. All of these instructions specify a source location from which the data is to be moved, and a destination location. The source location is not altered by a load instruction. Examples of load group instructions include moves between any of the general-purpose registers such as move the data to Register B from Register C. This group also includes load-immediate to any CPU register or to any external memory location. Other types of load instructions allow transfer between CPU registers and memory locations. The exchange instructions can trade the contents of two registers.

A unique set of block transfer instructions is provided in the Z80 CPU. With a single instruction, a block of memory of any size can be moved to any other location in memory. This set of block moves is extremely valuable when processing large strings of data. With a single instruction, a block of external memory of any required length can be searched for any 8-bit character. When the character is found or the end of the block is reached, the instruction automatically terminates. Both the block transfer and the block search instructions can be interrupted during their execution so they are not occupying the CPU for long periods of time.

The arithmetic and logical instructions operate on data stored in the Accumulator and other general-purpose CPU registers or external memory locations. The results of the operations are placed in the Accumulator and the appropriate flags are set according to the result of the operation.

An example of an arithmetic operation is adding the Accumulator to the contents of an external memory location. The results of the addition are placed in the Accumulator. This group also includes 16-bit addition and subtraction between 16-bit CPU registers.

The rotate and shift group allows any register or any memory location to be rotated right or left, with or without carry, and either arithmetic or logical. Additionally, a digit in the Accumulator can be rotated right or left with two digits in any memory location.

The bit manipulation instructions allow any bit in the Accumulator, any general-purpose register, or any external memory location to be set, reset, or tested with a single instruction. For example, the most-significant bit of Register H can be reset. This group is especially useful in control applications and for controlling software flags in general-purpose programming.

The JUMP, CALL, and RETURN instructions are used to transfer between multiple locations in the user's program. This group uses several different techniques for obtaining the new program counter address from specific external memory locations. A unique type of call is the RESTART instruction. This instruction actually contains the new address as a part of the 8-bit op code. This instruction is possible because only eight separate addresses located in Page 0 of external memory can be specified. Program jumps can also be achieved by loading Register HL, IX, or IY directly into the Program Counter, which allows the jump address to be a complex function of the routine being executed.

The input/output group of instructions in the Z80 CPU allow for a wide range of transfers between external memory locations or the general-purpose CPU registers, and the external I/O devices. In each case, the port number is provided on the lower eight bits of the address bus during any I/O transaction. One instruction allows this port number to be specified by the second byte of the instruction while other Z80 instructions allow it to be specified as the contents of the C Register. One major advantage of using the C register as a pointer to the I/O device is that it allows multiple I/O ports to share common software driver routines. This advantage is not possible when the address is part of the op code if the routines are stored in ROM. Another feature of these input instructions is the automatic setting of the Flag Register, making additional operations unnecessary to determine the state of the input data. The parity state is one example.

The Z80 CPU includes single instructions that can move blocks of data (up to 256 bytes) automatically to or from any I/O port directly to any memory location. In conjunction with the dual set of general-purpose registers, these instructions provide fast I/O block transfer rates. The power of this I/O instruction set is demonstrated by the Z80 CPU providing all required floppy disk formatting on double-density floppy disk drives on an interrupt-driven basis. For example, the CPU provides the preamble, address, data, and enables the CRC codes.

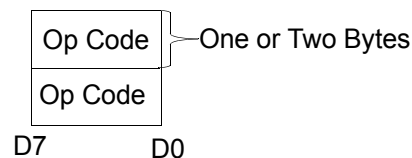
Finally, the basic CPU control instructions allow multiple options and modes. This group includes instructions such as setting or resetting the interrupt enable flip-flop or setting the mode of interrupt response.

## Addressing Modes

Most of the Z80 instructions operate on data stored in internal CPU registers, external memory, or in the I/O ports. Addressing refers to how the address of this data is generated in each instruction. This section is a brief summary of the types of addressing used in the Z80 CPU while subsequent sections detail the type of addressing available for each instruction group.

### Immediate Addressing

In the Immediate Addressing Mode, the byte following the op code in memory contains the actual operand, as shown in Figure 25.

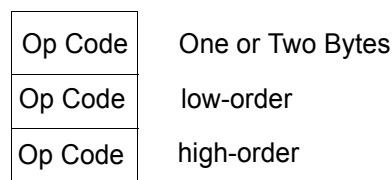


**Figure 25. Immediate Addressing Mode**

An example of this type of instruction is to load the Accumulator with a constant, in which the constant is the byte immediately following the op code.

### Immediate Extended Addressing

This mode is an extension of immediate addressing in that the two bytes following the op codes are the operand, as shown in Figure 26.



**Figure 26. Immediate Extended Addressing Mode**

An example of this type of instruction is to load the HL register pair (16-bit register) with 16 bits (two bytes) of data.



## Modified Page Zero Addressing

The Z80 contains a special single-byte CALL instruction to any of eight locations in Page 0 of memory. This instruction, which is referred to as a restart, sets the Program Counter to an effective address in Page 0. The value of this instruction is that it allows a single byte to specify a complete 16-bit address at which commonly-called subroutines are located, thereby saving memory space.

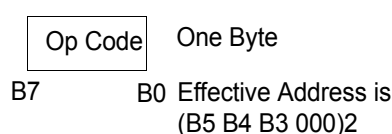


Figure 27. Modified Page Zero Addressing Mode

## Relative Addressing

Relative addressing uses one byte of data following the op code to specify a displacement from the existing program to which a program jump can occur. This displacement is a signed two's complement number that is added to the address of the op code of the following instruction.

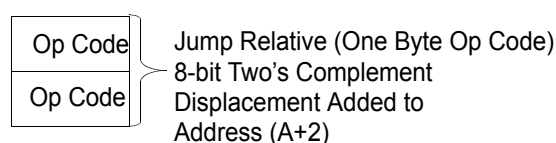
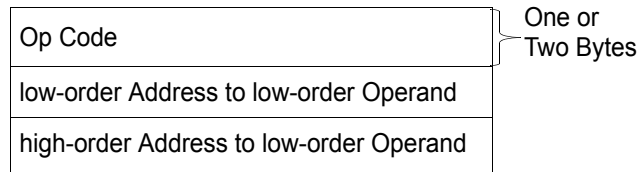


Figure 28. Relative Addressing Mode

The value of relative addressing is that it allows jumps to nearby locations while only requiring two bytes of memory space. For most programs, relative jumps are by far the most prevalent type of jump due to the proximity of related program segments. Therefore, these instructions can significantly reduce memory space requirements. The signed displacement can range between +127 and -128 from A+2. This range allows for a total displacement of +129 to -126 from the jump relative op code address. Another major advantage is that it allows for relocatable code.

## Extended Addressing

Extended Addressing provides for two bytes (16 bits) of address to be included in the instruction. This data can be an address to which a program can jump or it can be an address at which an operand is located.



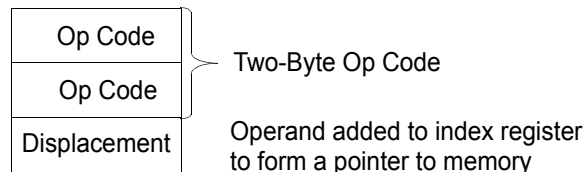
**Figure 29. Extended Addressing Mode**

Extended addressing is required for a program to jump from any location in memory to any other location, or load and store data in any memory location.

During extended addressing use, specify the source or destination address of an operand. This notation (*nn*) is used to indicate the contents of memory at *nn*, in which *nn* is the 16-bit address specified in the instruction. The two bytes of address *nn* are used as a pointer to a memory location. The parentheses always indicates that the value enclosed within them is used as a pointer to a memory location. For example, (1200) refers to the contents of memory at location 1200.

## Indexed Addressing

In the Indexed Addressing Mode, the byte of data following the op code contains a displacement that is added to one of the two index registers (the op code specifies which index register is used) to form a pointer to memory. The contents of the index register are not altered by this operation.



**Figure 30. Indexed Addressing Mode**

An example of an indexed instruction is to load the contents of the memory location (Index Register + Displacement) into the Accumulator. The displacement is a signed two's

complement number. Indexed addressing greatly simplifies programs using tables of data because the index register can point to the start of any table. Two index registers are provided because often operations require two or more tables. Indexed addressing also allows for relocatable code.

The two index registers in the Z80 CPU are referred to as IX and IY. To indicate indexed addressing, use the following notation:

$(IX+d)$  or  $(IY+d)$

In this notation,  $d$  is the displacement specified after the op code. The parentheses indicate that this value is used as a pointer to external memory.

## Register Addressing

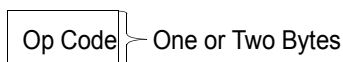
Many of the Z80 op codes contain bits of information that specify which CPU register is to be used for an operation. An example of register addressing is to load the data in Register 6 into Register C.

## Implied Addressing

Implied addressing refers to operations in which the op code automatically implies one or more CPU registers as containing the operands. An example is the set of arithmetic operations in which the Accumulator is always implied to be the destination of the results.

## Register Indirect Addressing

This type of addressing specifies a 16-bit CPU register pair (such as HL) to be used as a pointer to any location in memory. This type of instruction is powerful and it is used in a wide range of applications.



**Figure 31. Register Indirect Addressing Mode**

An example of this type of instruction is to load the Accumulator with the data in the memory location pointed to by the HL register contents. Indexed addressing is actually a form of Register Indirect addressing except that a displacement is added with indexed addressing. Register indirect addressing allows for powerful but simple to implement memory accesses. The block move and search commands in the Z80 CPU are extensions of this type of addressing in which automatic register incrementing, decrementing, and comparing is added. The notation for indicating Register Indirect addressing is to put

parentheses around the name of the register that is to be used as the pointer. For example, the symbol (HL) specifies that the contents of the HL register are to be used as a pointer to a memory location. Often Register Indirect addressing is used to specify 16-bit operands. In this case, the register contents point to the lower order portion of the operand while the register contents are automatically incremented to obtain the upper portion of the operand.

## Bit Addressing

The Z80 contains a large number of bit set, reset, and test instructions. These instructions allow any memory location or CPU register to be specified for a bit operation through one of three previous addressing modes (register, Register Indirect, and indexed) while three bits in the op code specify which of the eight bits is to be manipulated.

## Addressing Mode Combinations

Many instructions include more than one operand (such as arithmetic instructions or loads). In these cases, two types of addressing can be employed. For example, load can use immediate addressing to specify the source and Register Indirect or indexed addressing to specify the destination.

## Instruction Notation Summary

Table 4 lists the operand notations and descriptions used in the Z80 Instruction Set.

**Table 4. Instruction Notation Summary**

| <b>Notation</b> | <b>Description</b>   |
|-----------------|--|
| <i>r</i>        | Identifies any of the registers <b>A, B, C, D, E, H, or L</b>  |
| <i>(HL)</i>     | Identifies the contents of the memory location, whose address is specified by the contents of the register pair <b>HL</b>  |
| <i>(IX+d)</i>   | Identifies the contents of the memory location, whose address is specified by the contents of the <i>Index</i> register pair <b>IX</b> plus the signed displacement <b>d</b> |
| <i>(IY+d)</i>   | Identifies the contents of the memory location, whose address is specified by the contents of the <i>Index</i> register pair <b>IY</b> plus the signed displacement <b>d</b> |
| <i>n</i>        | Identifies a one-byte unsigned integer expression in the range <b>(0 to 255)</b>   |
| <i>nn</i>       | Identifies a two-byte unsigned integer expression in the range <b>(0 to 65535)</b>   |
| <i>d</i>        | Identifies a one-byte signed integer expression in the range <b>(-128 to +127)</b>   |
| <i>b</i>        | Identifies a one-bit expression in the range <b>(0 to 7)</b> . The most-significant bit to the left is bit 7 and the least-significant bit to the right is bit 0             |
| <i>e</i>        | Identifies a one-byte signed integer expression in the range <b>(-126 to +129)</b> for <i>relative</i> jump offset from current location                                     |
| <i>cc</i>       | Identifies the status of the <i>Flag Register</i> as any of <b>(NZ, Z, NC, C, PO, PE, P, or M)</b> for the conditional jumps, calls, and return instructions                 |
| <i>qq</i>       | Identifies any of the register pairs <b>BC, DE, HL or AF</b>   |
| <i>ss</i>       | Identifies any of the register pairs <b>BC, DE, HL or SP</b>   |
| <i>pp</i>       | Identifies any of the register pairs <b>BC, DE, IX or SP</b>   |
| <i>rr</i>       | Identifies any of the register pairs <b>BC, DE, IY or SP</b>   |
| <i>s</i>        | Identifies any of <i>r, n, (HL), (IX+d)</i> or <i>(IY+d)</i>   |
| <i>m</i>        | Identifies any of <i>r, (HL), (IX+d)</i> or <i>(IY+d)</i>  |

## Instruction Op Codes

This section describes each of the Z80 instructions and provides tables listing the op codes for every instruction. In each of these tables, the op codes in shaded areas are identical to those offered in the 8080A CPU. Also depicted is the assembly language mnemonic that is used for each instruction. All instruction op codes are listed in hexadecimal notation. Single-byte op codes require two hex characters while double byte op codes require four hex characters. For convenience, the conversion from hex to binary is repeated in Table 5.

**Table 5. Hex, Binary, Decimal Conversion Table**

| Hex |   | Binary |   | Decimal |
|-----|---|--------|---|---------|
| 0   | = | 0000   | = | 0       |
| 1   | = | 0001   | = | 1       |
| 2   | = | 0010   | = | 2       |
| 3   | = | 0011   | = | 3       |
| 4   | = | 0100   | = | 4       |
| 5   | = | 0101   | = | 5       |
| 6   | = | 0110   | = | 6       |
| 7   | = | 0111   | = | 7       |
| 8   | = | 1000   | = | 8       |
| 9   | = | 1001   | = | 9       |
| A   | = | 1010   | = | 10      |
| B   | = | 1011   | = | 11      |
| C   | = | 1100   | = | 12      |
| D   | = | 1101   | = | 13      |
| E   | = | 1110   | = | 14      |
| F   | = | 1111   | = | 15      |

The Z80 instruction mnemonics consist of an op code and zero, one, or two operands. Instructions in which the operand is implied contains no operand. Instructions that contain only one logical operand, in which one operand is invariant (such as the Logical OR instruction), are represented by a one-operand mnemonic. Instructions that contain two varying operands are represented by two operand mnemonics.

## Load and Exchange

Table 6 defines the op codes for all of the 8-bit load instructions implemented in the Z80 CPU. Also described in this table is the type of addressing used for each instruction. The source of the data is found on the top horizontal row and the destination is specified in the left column. For example, load Register C from Register B uses the op code 48h. In all of the figures, the op code is specified in hexadecimal notation and the 48h (0100 1000 binary) code is fetched by the CPU from external memory during M1 time, decoded, and then the register transfer is automatically performed by the CPU.

The assembly language mnemonic for this entire group is LD, followed by the destination, followed by the source (LD DEST, SOURCE).

- 
- **Note:** Several combinations of addressing modes are possible. For example, the source can use register addressing and the destination can be registered indirect; such as load the memory location pointed to by Register HL with the contents of the D Register. The op code for this operation is 72. The mnemonic for this load instruction is LD (HL), D.
-

Table 6. 8-Bit Load Group LD

| Destination       |        | Source   |          |               |               |               |               |               |               |               |              |      |      |               |               |          |                    |
|-------------------|--------|----------|----------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|------|------|---------------|---------------|----------|--------------------|
|                   |        | Implied  |          | Register      |               |               |               |               |               |               | Reg Indirect |      |      | Indexed       |               | Ext.     | Imm.               |
|                   |        | I        | R        | A             | B             | C             | D             | E             | F             | L             | (HL)         | (BC) | (DE) | (IX+d)        | (IY+d)        | (nn)     | n                  |
| Register          | A      | ED<br>57 | ED<br>5F | 7F            | 78            | 79            | 7A            | 7B            | 7C            | 7D            | 7E           | 0A   | 1A   | DD<br>7E<br>d | FD<br>7E<br>d | 3A<br>nn | 3E<br>n            |
|                   | B      |          |          | 47            | 40            | 41            | 42            | 43            | 44            | 45            | 46           |      |      | DD<br>46<br>d | FD<br>46<br>d |          | 06<br>n            |
|                   | C      |          |          | 4F            | 48            | 49            | 4A            | 4B            | 4C            | 4D            | 4E           |      |      | DD<br>4E<br>d | FD<br>4E<br>d |          | 0E<br>n            |
|                   | D      |          |          | 57            | 50            | 51            | 52            | 53            | 54            | 55            | 56           |      |      | DD<br>56<br>d | FD<br>56<br>d |          | 16<br>n            |
|                   | E      |          |          | 5F            | 58            | 59            | 5A            | 5B            | 5C            | 5D            | 5E           |      |      | DD<br>5E<br>d | FD<br>5E<br>d |          | 1E<br>n            |
|                   | H      |          |          | 67            | 60            | 61            | 62            | 63            | 64            | 65            | 66           |      |      | DD<br>66<br>d | FD<br>66<br>d |          | 26<br>n            |
|                   | L      |          |          | 6F            | 68            | 69            | 6A            | 6B            | 6C            | 6D            | 6E           |      |      | DD<br>6E<br>d | FD<br>6E<br>d |          | 2E<br>n            |
| Register Indirect | (HL)   |          |          | 77            | 70            | 71            | 72            | 73            | 74            | 75            |              |      |      |               |               |          | 36<br>n            |
|                   | (BC)   |          |          | 02            |               |               |               |               |               |               |              |      |      |               |               |          |                    |
|                   | (DE)   |          |          | 12            |               |               |               |               |               |               |              |      |      |               |               |          |                    |
| Indexed           | (IX+d) |          |          | DD<br>77<br>d | DD<br>70<br>d | DD<br>71<br>d | DD<br>72<br>d | DD<br>73<br>d | DD<br>74<br>d | DD<br>75<br>d |              |      |      |               |               |          | DD<br>36<br>d<br>n |
|                   | (IY+d) |          |          | FD<br>77<br>d | FD<br>70<br>d | FD<br>71<br>d | FD<br>72<br>d | FD<br>73<br>d | FD<br>74<br>d | FD<br>75<br>d |              |      |      |               |               |          | FD<br>36<br>d<br>n |
| Ext. Addr.        | (nn)   |          |          | 32<br>n<br>n  |               |               |               |               |               |               |              |      |      |               |               |          |                    |
| Implied           | I      |          |          | ED<br>47      |               |               |               |               |               |               |              |      |      |               |               |          |                    |
|                   | R      |          |          | ED<br>4F      |               |               |               |               |               |               |              |      |      |               |               |          |                    |



► **Note:** Descriptions of the [8-Bit Load Group](#) instructions begin on page 70.

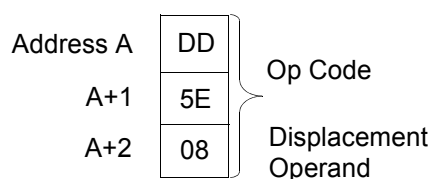
The parentheses around the HL indicate that the contents of HL are used as a pointer to a memory location. In all Z80 load instruction mnemonics, the destination is always listed first, with the source following. The Z80 assembly language is defined for ease of programming. Every instruction is self documenting and programs written in Z80 language are easy to maintain.

In Table 6, some op codes that are available in the Z80 CPU use two bytes. This feature is an efficient method of memory utilization because 8-, 18-, 24-, or 32-bit instructions are implemented in the Z80 CPU. Often utilized instructions such as arithmetic or logical operations are only eight bits, which results in better memory utilization than is achieved with fixed instruction sizes such as 16 bits.

All load instructions using indexed addressing for either the source or destination location actually use three bytes of memory, with the third byte being the displacement, *d*. For example, a Load Register E instruction with the operand pointed to by IX with an offset of +8 is written as:

LID E, (IX + 8)

The instruction sequence for this value in memory is shown in Figure 32.



**Figure 32. Example of a 3-Byte Load Indexed Instruction Sequence**

The two extended addressing instructions are also three-byte instructions. For example, the instruction to load the Accumulator with the operand in memory location 6F32h is written as:

LID A, (6F 32h)

The instruction sequence for this value in memory is shown in Figure 33.

|           |    |                    |
|-----------|----|--------------------|
| Address A | 3A | Op Code            |
| A+1       | 32 | low-order Address  |
| A+2       | 6F | high-order Address |

**Figure 33. Example of a 3-Byte Load Extended Instruction Sequence**

In this figure, note that the low-order portion of the address is always the first operand.

The load immediate instructions for the general-purpose 8-bit registers are two-byte instructions. The instruction for loading Register H with the value 36h is written as:

LD H, 36h

The instruction sequence for this value in memory is shown in Figure 34.

|           |    |         |
|-----------|----|---------|
| Address A | 26 | Op Code |
| A+1       | 36 | Operand |

**Figure 34. Example of a 2-Byte Load Immediate Instruction Sequence**

Loading a memory location using indexed addressing for the destination and immediate addressing for the source requires four bytes. For example:

LD (IX-15), 21h

The instruction sequence for this value in memory is shown in Figure 35.

|           |    |   |
|-----------|----|---|
| Address A | DD | Op Code   |
| A+1       | 36 |   |
| A+2       | F1 | One or Two Bytes<br>Displacement (-15 in Signed |
| A+3       | 21 | Two's Complement<br>Operand to Load             |

**Figure 35. Example of a 4-Byte Load Indexed/Immediate Instruction Sequence**

In this figure, note that with any indexed addressing, the displacement always follows directly after the op code.

Table 7 specifies the 16-bit load operations, for which the extended addressing feature covers all register pairs. Register indirect operations specifying the stack pointer are the PUSH and POP instructions. The mnemonic for these instructions is PUSH and POP.

**Table 7. 16-Bit Load Group LD, PUSH, and POP**

| Register               |                              | Source   |                    |                    |              |                    |                    |                    |                    | Imm. Ext.<br>nn    | Ext.<br>(nn) | Reg. Indir.<br>(SP) |
|------------------------|------------------------------|----------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------|---------------------|
|                        |                              | Register |                    |                    |              |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |              |                     |
|                        |                              | AF       | BC                 | DE                 | HL           | SP                 | IX                 | IY                 |                    |                    |              |                     |
|                        | AF                           |          |                    |                    |              |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |              | P1                  |
|                        | BC                           |          |                    |                    |              |                    |                    |                    | 01<br>n<br>n       | ED<br>4B<br>n<br>n |              | C1                  |
|                        | DE                           |          |                    |                    |              |                    |                    |                    | 11<br>n<br>n       | ED<br>5B<br>n<br>n |              | D1                  |
|                        | HL                           |          |                    |                    |              |                    |                    |                    | 21<br>n<br>n       | 2A<br>n<br>n       |              | E1                  |
|                        | SP                           |          |                    |                    | F9           |                    | DD<br>F9           | FD<br>F9           | 31<br>n<br>n       | ED<br>7B<br>n<br>n |              |                     |
|                        | IX                           |          |                    |                    |              |                    |                    |                    | DD<br>21<br>n<br>n | DD<br>2A<br>n<br>n |              | DD<br>E1            |
|                        | IY                           |          |                    |                    |              |                    |                    |                    | FD<br>21<br>n<br>n | FD<br>2A<br>n<br>n |              | FD<br>E1            |
|                        | Extended<br>(nn)             |          | ED<br>43<br>n<br>n | ED<br>53<br>n<br>n | 22<br>n<br>n | ED<br>73<br>n<br>n | DD<br>22<br>n<br>n | FD<br>22<br>n<br>n |                    |                    |              |                     |
| PUSH<br>Instructions → | Register<br>Indirect<br>(SP) | F6       | C6                 | D6                 | E6           |                    | DD<br>E6           | FD<br>E6           |                    |                    |              |                     |
|                        |                              |          |                    |                    |              |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |              | POP<br>Instructions |

Note: The PUSH and POP instruction adjust the SP after every execution.

---

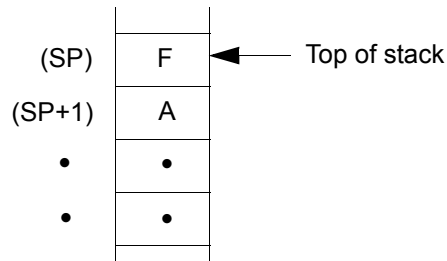
► **Note:** Descriptions of the [16-Bit Load Group](#) instructions begin on page 98.

---

These 16-bit load operations differ from other 16-bit loads in that the stack pointer is automatically decremented and incremented as each byte is pushed onto or popped from the stack, respectively. For example, the PUSH AF instruction is a single-byte instruction with the op code of F5h. During execution, this sequence is generated as:

```
Decrement SP
LD (SP), A
Decrement SP
LD (SP), F
```

The external stack now appears as shown in Figure 36.



**Figure 36. Example of a 16-Bit Load Operation**

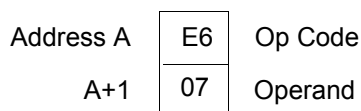
The POP instruction is the exact reverse of a PUSH. All PUSH and POP instructions utilize a 16-bit operand and the high-order byte is always pushed first and popped last.

```
PUSH BC is PUSH B then C
PUSH DE is PUSH D then E
PUSH HL is PUSH H then L
POP HL is POP L then H
```

The instruction using extended immediate addressing for the source requires two bytes of data following the op code, as shown in the following example:

```
LD DE, 0659h
```

The instruction sequence for this value in memory is shown in Figure 37.



**Figure 37. Example of a 2-Byte Load Indexed/Immediate Instruction Sequence**

In all extended immediate or extended addressing modes, the low-order byte always appears first after the op code.

Table 8 lists the 16-bit exchange instructions implemented in the Z80 CPU. Op code 08h allows the programmer to switch between the two pairs of Accumulator flag registers, while D9h allows the programmer to switch between the duplicate set of six general-purpose registers. These op codes are only one byte in length to minimize the time necessary to perform the exchange so that the duplicate banks can be used to make fast interrupt response times.

**Table 8. Exchanges EX and EXX**

|                   |      | Implied Addressing |                      |    |          |          |
|-------------------|------|--------------------|----------------------|----|----------|----------|
|                   |      | AF'                | BC', DE',<br>and HL' | HL | IX       | IY       |
| Implied           | AF   | 08                 |                      |    |          |          |
|                   | BC   |                    |                      |    |          |          |
|                   | DE   |                    | D9                   |    |          |          |
|                   | HL   |                    |                      |    |          |          |
|                   | DE   |                    |                      | EB |          |          |
| Register Indirect | (SP) |                    |                      | E3 | DD<br>E3 | FD<br>E3 |

## Block Transfer and Search

Table 9 lists the extremely powerful block transfer instructions. These instructions operate with three registers.

- HL points to the source location
- DE points to the destination location
- BC is a byte counter

**Table 9. Block Transfer Group**

| Destination       |      | Source            |   |
|-------------------|------|-------------------|---|
| Register Indirect | (DE) | Register Indirect |   |
|                   |      | (HL)              |   |
|                   |      | (ED) A0           | LDI – Load (DE) → (HL)<br>Inc HL and DE, Dec BC                         |
|                   |      | (ED) B0           | LDIR, – Load (DE) → (HL)<br>Inc HL and DE, Dec BC; repeat until BC = 0. |
|                   |      | (ED) A8           | LDD – Load (DE) → (HL)<br>Inc HL and DE, Dec BC                         |
|                   |      | (ED) B8           | LDDR – Load (DE) → (HL)<br>Dec HL and DE, Dec BC; repeat until BC = 0.  |

Note: Register HL points to the source; the DE Register points to the destination; the BC Register is a byte counter.

After the programmer initializes these three registers, any of these four instructions can be used. The Load and Increment (LDI) instruction moves one byte from the location pointed to by HL to the location pointed to by DE. Register pairs HL and DE are then automatically incremented and are ready to point to the following locations. The byte counter (i.e., register pair BC) is also decremented at this time. This instruction is valuable when the blocks of data must be moved but other types of processing are required between each move. The Load, Increment and Repeat (LDIR) instruction is an extension of the LDI instruction. The same load and increment operation is repeated until the byte counter reaches the count of zero. As a result, this single instruction can move any block of data from one location to any other.

Because 16-bit registers are used, the size of the block can be up to 64KB long (1KB = 1024 bytes) and can be moved from any location in memory to any other location. Furthermore, the blocks can be overlapping because there are no constraints on the data used in the three register pairs.

The LDD and LDDR instructions are similar to LDI and LDIR. The only difference is that register pairs HL and DE are decremented after every move so that a block transfer starts from the highest address of the designated block rather than the lowest.

Table 10 specifies the op codes for the four block search instructions. The first, CPI (Compare and Increment) compares the data in the Accumulator with the contents of the memory location pointed to by Register HL. The result of the compare is stored in one of the flag bits and the HL register pair is then incremented and the byte counter (register pair BC) is decremented.

**Table 10. Block Search Group**

| Search Location   |   |
|---|---|
| Register Indirect   |   |
| (HL)  |   |
| (ED)<br>A1  | CPI<br>Inc HL, Dec BC                                     |
| (ED)<br>B1  | CPRI. Inc HL, Dec BC<br>Repeat until BC = 0 or find match |
| (ED)<br>A9  | WD Dec HL and BC  |
| (ED)<br>B9  | CPDR Dec HL and BC<br>Repeat until BC = 0 or find match   |
| Note: HL points to a location in memory to be compared with Accumulator contents; BC is a byte counter. |   |

---

► **Note:** Descriptions of the [Exchange, Block Transfer, and Search Group](#) instructions begin on page 123.

---

The CPIR instruction is merely an extension of the CPI instruction in which the compare is repeated until either a match is found or the byte counter (register pair BC) becomes zero. As a result, this single instruction can search the entire memory for any 8-bit character.

The Compare and Decrement (CPD) and Compare, Decrement, and Repeat (CPDR) instructions are similar; however, their only difference is that they decrement HL after every compare so that they search the memory in the opposite direction; i.e., the search is started at the highest location in the memory block.

These block transfer and compare instructions are extremely powerful in string manipulation applications.

## Arithmetic and Logical

Table 11 lists all of the 8-bit arithmetic operations that can be performed with the Accumulator. Also listed are the increment (INC) and decrement (DEC) instructions. In all of these instructions, with the exception of INC and DEC, the specified 8-bit operation is performed between the data in the Accumulator and the source data.

**Table 11. 8-Bit Arithmetic and Logic**

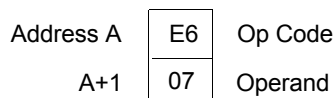
| Destination                | Source              |    |    |    |    |    |    |                   |               |               |           |
|----------------------------|---------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|-------------------|---------------|---------------|-----------|
|                            | Register Addressing |    |    |    |    |    |    | Register Indirect | Indexed       |               | Immediate |
|                            | A                   | B  | C  | D  | E  | F  | L  | (HL)              | (IX+d)        | (IY+d)        | n         |
| ADD                        | 87                  | 80 | 81 | 82 | 83 | 84 | 85 | 88                | DD<br>86<br>d | FD<br>86<br>d | C6<br>n   |
| Add with Carry<br>ADC      | 8F                  | 88 | 89 | 8A | 8B | 8C | 8D | 8E                | DD<br>8E<br>d | FD<br>8E<br>d | CE<br>n   |
| Subtract<br>SUB            | 97                  | 90 | 91 | 92 | 93 | 94 | 95 | 96                | DD<br>96<br>d | FD<br>96<br>d | D6<br>n   |
| Subtract with Carry<br>SBC | 9F                  | 98 | 99 | 9A | 9B | 9C | 9D | 9E                | DD<br>9E<br>d | FD<br>9E<br>d | DE<br>n   |
| AND                        | A7                  | A0 | A1 | A2 | A3 | A4 | A5 | A6                | DD<br>A6<br>d | FD<br>A6<br>d | E6<br>n   |
| XOR                        | AF                  | A8 | A9 | AA | AB | AC | AD | AE                | DD<br>AE<br>d | FD<br>AE<br>d | EE<br>n   |
| OR                         | B7                  | B0 | B1 | B2 | B3 | B4 | B5 | B6                | DD<br>B6<br>d | FD<br>B6<br>d | F6<br>n   |
| Compare<br>CP              | BF                  | B8 | B9 | BA | BB | BC | BD | BE                | DD<br>BE<br>d | FD<br>BE<br>d | FE<br>n   |
| Increment<br>INC           | 3C                  | 04 | 0C | 14 | 1C | 24 | 2C | 34                | DD<br>34<br>d | FD<br>34<br>d |           |
| Decrement<br>DEC           | 3D                  | 05 | 0D | 15 | 1D | 25 | 2D | 35                | DD<br>35<br>d | FD<br>35<br>d |           |

► **Note:** Descriptions of the [8-Bit Arithmetic Group](#) instructions begin on page 144.

The result of the operation is placed in the Accumulator with the exception of the compare (CP) instruction, which leaves the Accumulator unchanged. All of these operations effect the Flag Register as a result of a specified operation.



The INC and DEC instructions specify a register or a memory location as both the source and the destination of the result. When the source operand is addressed using the index registers, the displacement must directly follow. With immediate addressing, the actual operand directly follows. As an example, the AND 07h instruction is shown in Figure 38.



**Figure 38. Example of an AND Instruction Sequence**

Assuming that the Accumulator contains the value F3h, the result of 03h is placed in the Accumulator:

|                              |                 |
|------------------------------|-----------------|
| Accumulator before operation | 1111 0011 = F3h |
| Operand                      | 0000 0111 = 07h |
| Result to Accumulator        | 0000 0011 = 03h |

The Add (ADD) instruction performs a binary add between the data in the source location and the data in the Accumulator. The Subtract (SUB) instruction performs a binary subtraction. When an Add with Carry (ADC) or Subtract with Carry (SBC) instruction is specified, the Carry flag is also added or subtracted, respectively. The flags and the Decimal Adjust (DAA) instruction in the Z80 CPU allow arithmetic operations for processing the following items:

- Multiprecision packed BCD numbers
- Multiprecision signed or unsigned binary numbers
- Multiprecision two's complement signed numbers

Other instructions in this group are the Logical And (AND), Logical Or (OR), Exclusive Or (XOR), and Compare (CP) instructions.

Five general-purpose arithmetic instructions operate on the Accumulator or Carry flag. These five instructions are listed in Table 12.

**Table 12. General-Purpose AF Operation**

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| Decimal Adjust Accumulator (DAA)               | 27       |
| Complement Accumulator (CPL)                   | 2F       |
| Negate Accumulator (NEG)<br>(two's complement) | ED<br>44 |
| Complement Carry Flag (CCF)                    | 3F       |
| Set Carry Flag (SCF)                           | 37       |

- **Note:** Descriptions of the [General-Purpose Arithmetic and CPU Control Groups](#) instructions begin on page 172.

The decimal adjust instruction can adjust for subtraction and addition, making BCD arithmetic operations simple.

- **Notes:**
1. To allow for this operation, the N flag is used. This flag is set if the most recent arithmetic operation was a Subtract. The Negate Accumulator (NEG) instruction forms the two's complement of the number in the Accumulator.
  2. A Reset Carry instruction is not included in the Z80 CPU, because this operation can be easily achieved through other instructions such as a logical AND of the Accumulator with itself.

Table 12 lists all of the 16-bit arithmetic operations between 16-bit registers. There are five groups of instructions, including the Add with Carry and Subtract with Carry instructions; ADC and SBC affect all of the flags. These two groups simplify address calculation or other 16-bit arithmetic operations.

**Table 13. 16-Bit Arithmetic**

|                                       |    | Source   |          |          |          |          |          |
|---------------------------------------|----|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
|                                       |    | BC       | DE       | HL       | SP       | IX       | IY       |
| Destination                           | HL | 09       | 19       | 29       | 39       |          |          |
|                                       | IX | DD<br>09 | DD<br>19 |          | DD<br>39 | DD<br>29 |          |
|                                       |    | IY       | FD<br>09 | FD<br>19 |          | FD<br>39 |          |
| Add (ADD)                             |    |          |          |          |          |          |          |
| Add with Carry and set ADC flags      | HL | ED<br>4A | ED<br>5A | ED<br>6A | ED<br>7A |          |          |
| Subtract with Carry and set SBC flags | HL | ED<br>42 | ED<br>52 | ED<br>62 | ED<br>72 |          |          |
| Increment (INC)                       |    | 03       | 13       | 23       | 33       | DD<br>23 | FD<br>23 |
| Decrement (DEC)                       |    | DB       | 1B       | 2B       | 3B       | DD<br>2B | FD<br>2B |

- **Note:** Descriptions of the [16-Bit Arithmetic Group](#) instructions begin on page 187.

## Rotate and Shift

A major feature of the Z80 CPU is to rotate or shift data in the Accumulator, any general-purpose register, or any memory location. All of the Rotate and Shift op codes are depicted in Figure 39. Also included in the Z80 CPU are arithmetic and logical shift operations. These operations are useful in a wide range of applications including integer multiplication and division. Two BCD digit rotate instructions (RRD and RLD) allow a digit in the Accumulator to be rotated with the two digits in a memory location pointed to by register pair HL. These instructions allow for efficient BCD arithmetic.

| Type of Rotate Shift | Source |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |            |            | A       |
|----------------------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------------|------------|---------|
|                      | A      | B     | C     | D     | E     | F     | L     | (HL)  | (IX+d)     | (IY+d)     |         |
| RCL                  | CB 07  | CB 00 | CB 01 | CB 02 | CB 03 | CB 04 | CB 06 | CB 0E | DD CB d 06 | FD CB d 06 | RLCA 07 |
| RRC                  | CB 0F  | CB 08 | CB 09 | CB 0A | CB 06 | CB 0C | CB 0D | CB 0E | DD CB d 0E | FD CB d 0E | RRCA 0F |
| RL                   | CB 17  | CB 10 | CB 11 | CB 12 | CB 13 | CB 14 | CB 15 | CB 16 | DD CB d 16 | FD CB d 16 | RLA 17  |
| RR                   | CB 1F  | CB 18 | CB 19 | CB 1A | CB 1B | CB 1C | CB 1D | CB 1E | DD CB d 1E | FD CB d 1E | RRA 1F  |
| SLA                  | CB 27  | CB 20 | CB 21 | CB 22 | CB 23 | CB 24 | CB 25 | CB 26 | DD CB d 26 | FD CB d 26 |         |
| SRA                  | CB 2F  | CB 28 | CB 29 | CB 2A | CB 2B | CB 2C | CB 2D | CB 2E | DD CB d 2E | FD CB d 2E |         |
| SRL                  | CB 3F  | CB 38 | CB 39 | CB 3A | CB 3B | CB 3C | CB 3D | CB 3E | DD CB d 3E | FD CB d 3E |         |
|                      |        |       |       |       |       |       |       | ED 6F |            |            |         |
|                      |        |       |       |       |       |       |       | ED 67 |            |            |         |

The diagrams illustrate the following operations:

- Rotate Left Circular:** A register of bits  $b_7$  to  $b_0$  with the carry flag (CY) connected to  $b_7$  and  $b_0$  connected to CY.
- Rotate Right Circular:** A register of bits  $b_7$  to  $b_0$  with the carry flag (CY) connected to  $b_7$  and  $b_0$  connected to CY.
- Rotate Left:** A register of bits  $b_7$  to  $b_0$  with  $b_7$  connected to  $b_6$  and  $b_0$  connected to  $b_7$ .
- Rotate Right:** A register of bits  $b_7$  to  $b_0$  with  $b_7$  connected to  $b_6$  and  $b_0$  connected to  $b_7$ .
- Shift Left Arithmetic:** A register of bits  $b_7$  to  $b_0$  with the carry flag (CY) connected to  $b_7$ .
- Shift Right Arithmetic:** A register of bits  $b_7$  to  $b_0$  with the carry flag (CY) connected to  $b_7$  and  $b_0$  connected to  $b_7$ .
- Shift Right Logical:** A register of bits  $b_7$  to  $b_0$  with a constant 0 connected to  $b_7$ .
- Rotate Digit Left (HL):** A register of bits  $b_7$  to  $b_0$  with the carry flag (CY) connected to  $b_7$  and  $b_0$  connected to  $b_7$ .
- Rotate Digit Right (HL):** A register of bits  $b_7$  to  $b_0$  with the carry flag (CY) connected to  $b_7$  and  $b_0$  connected to  $b_7$ .

Figure 39. Rotates and Shifts

► **Note:** Descriptions of the [Rotate and Shift Group](#) instructions begin on page 204.

## Bit Manipulation

The ability to set, reset, and test individual bits in a register or memory location is required in almost every program. These bits can be flags in a general-purpose software routine, indications of external control conditions, or data packed into memory locations, making memory utilization more efficient.

With a single instruction, the Z80 CPU can set, reset, or test any bit in the Accumulator, in any general-purpose register, or in any memory location. Table 14 lists the 240 instructions that are available for this purpose.

**Table 14. Bit Manipulation Group**

|          |   | Register Addressing |    |    |    |    |    | Register Indirect | Indexed |        |        |
|----------|---|---------------------|----|----|----|----|----|-------------------|---------|--------|--------|
|          |   | A                   | 8  | C  | D  | E  | H  | L                 | (HL)    | (IX+d) | (IY+d) |
| Test Bit | 0 | C8                  | C8 | C8 | C8 | C8 | C8 | C8                | C8      | C8     | C8     |
|          |   | 47                  | 40 | 41 | 42 | 43 | 44 | 45                | 46      | d      | d      |
|          | 1 |                     |    |    |    |    |    |                   |         | 46     | 46     |
|          |   |                     |    |    |    |    |    |                   |         | DD     | FD     |
|          |   | C8                  | C8 | C8 | C8 | C8 | C8 | C8                | C8      | C8     | C8     |
|          |   | 4F                  | 48 | 49 | 4A | 48 | 4C | 4D                | 4E      | d      | d      |
|          | 2 |                     |    |    |    |    |    |                   |         | 4E     | 4E     |
|          |   |                     |    |    |    |    |    |                   |         | DD     | FD     |
|          |   | C8                  | C8 | C8 | C8 | C8 | C8 | C8                | C8      | C8     | C8     |
|          |   | 57                  | 50 | 51 | 52 | 53 | 54 | 55                | 56      | d      | d      |
|          | 3 |                     |    |    |    |    |    |                   |         | 56     | 56     |
|          |   |                     |    |    |    |    |    |                   |         | DD     | FD     |
|          |   | C8                  | C8 | C8 | C8 | C8 | C8 | C8                | C8      | C8     | C8     |
|          |   | 5F                  | 58 | 59 | 5A | 5B | 5C | 5D                | 5E      | d      | d      |
|          | 4 |                     |    |    |    |    |    |                   |         | 46     | 46     |
|          |   |                     |    |    |    |    |    |                   |         | DD     | FD     |
|          |   | C8                  | C8 | C8 | C8 | C8 | C8 | C8                | C8      | C8     | C8     |
|          |   | 67                  | 60 | 61 | 62 | 63 | 64 | 65                | 66      | d      | d      |
|          | 5 |                     |    |    |    |    |    |                   |         | 66     | 66     |
|          |   |                     |    |    |    |    |    |                   |         | DD     | FD     |
|          |   | C8                  | C8 | C8 | C8 | C8 | C8 | C8                | C8      | C8     | C8     |
|          |   | 6F                  | 68 | 69 | 6A | 68 | 6C | 6D                | 6E      | d      | d      |
|          |   |                     |    |    |    |    |    |                   | 6E      | 6E     |        |

**Table 14. Bit Manipulation Group (Continued)**

| Test Bit<br>(cont'd.) |   | Register Addressing |          |          |          |          |          | Register<br>Indirect | Indexed  |    |    |    |
|-----------------------|---|---------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------------------|----------|----|----|----|
|                       |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |                      | DD       | FD |    |    |
| 6                     |   | C8                  | C8       | C8       | C8       | C8       | C8       | C8                   | C8       | C8 | C8 |    |
|                       |   | 77                  | 70       | 71       | 72       | 73       | 74       | 75                   | 76       | d  | d  |    |
|                       |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | 76 | 76 |    |
|                       |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | DD | DD |    |
|                       |   | C8<br>7F            | C8<br>78 | C8<br>79 | C8<br>7A | C8<br>78 | C8<br>7C | CS<br>7D             | C8<br>7E | C8 | C8 |    |
|                       |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | d  | d  |    |
| Rest Bit<br>RES       | 0 |                     |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | DD | FD |    |
|                       |   |                     | C8       | C8       | C8       | C8       | C8       | C8                   | C8       | C8 | C8 | C8 |
|                       |   |                     | 87       | 80       | 81       | 82       | 83       | 84                   | 85       | 86 | d  | d  |
|                       |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          |    | 86 | 86 |
|                       |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          |    | DD | FD |
|                       | 1 |                     | C8       | C8       | C8       | C8       | C8       | C8                   | C8       | C8 | C8 | C8 |
|                       |   |                     | 8F       | 88       | 89       | 8A       | 88       | 8C                   | 8D       | 8E | d  | d  |
|                       |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          |    | 8E | 8E |
|                       |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          |    | DD | FD |
|                       | 2 |                     | C8       | C8       | CS       | C8       | C8       | C8                   | C8       | C8 | C8 | C8 |
|                       |   |                     | 97       | 90       | 91       | 92       | 93       | 94                   | 95       | 96 | d  | d  |
|                       |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          |    |    | 96 |
|                       |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          |    | DD | FD |
|                       | 3 |                     | C8       | C8       | C8       | C8       | CS       | C8                   | C8       | C8 | C8 | C8 |
|                       |   |                     | 9F       | 98       | 99       | 9A       | 98       | 90                   | 90       | 9E | d  | d  |
|                       |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          |    | 9E | 9E |
|                       |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          |    | DD | FD |
|                       | 4 |                     | C8       | C8       | C8       | C8       | C6       | C8                   | C8       | C8 | C8 | C8 |
|                       |   |                     | A7       | AO       | AI       | A2       | A3       | A4                   | A5       | A6 | d  | d  |
|                       |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          |    | A6 | A6 |
|                       |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          |    | DD | FD |
|                       | 5 |                     | C8       | C8       | C8       | C8       | 08       | C8                   | C8       | C8 | C8 | C8 |
|                       |   |                     | AF       | A8       | A9       | AA       | AB       | AC                   | AD       | AE | d  | d  |
|                       |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          |    | AE | AE |
|                       |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | DD | FD |    |
| 6                     |   | C8                  | C8       | C8       | C8       | C8       | C8       | C8                   | C8       | C8 | C8 |    |
|                       |   | B7                  | B0       | B1       | 82       | B3       | B4       | B5                   | B6       | d  | d  |    |
|                       |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | B6 | B6 |    |

**Table 14. Bit Manipulation Group (Continued)**

| Rest Bit<br>RES<br>(cont'd.) |   | Register Addressing |          |          |          |          |          |          | Register<br>Indirect | Indexed  |    |    |
|------------------------------|---|---------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------------------|----------|----|----|
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          |    |    |
| 7                            |   | C8<br>BF            | C8<br>B8 | C8<br>89 | C8<br>8A | C8<br>B8 | C8<br>8C | C8<br>BD | C8<br>9E             | DD       | DD |    |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      | C8       | C8 |    |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      | d        | d  |    |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      | BE       | BE |    |
| Set Bit<br>SET               | 0 | C8<br>C7            | C8<br>C0 | C8<br>C1 | C8<br>C2 | C8<br>C3 | C8<br>C4 | C8<br>C5 | C8<br>C6             | DD       | FD |    |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      | C8       | C8 |    |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      | d        | d  |    |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      | C6       | C6 |    |
|                              | 1 |                     | C8<br>CF | C8<br>C8 | C8<br>C9 | C8<br>CA | C8<br>C8 | C8<br>CC | C8<br>CD             | C8<br>CE | DD | FD |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | C8 | C8 |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | d  | d  |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | CE | CE |
|                              | 2 |                     | C8<br>D7 | C8<br>D0 | C8<br>D1 | C8<br>D2 | C8<br>D3 | C8<br>D4 | C8<br>DS             | C8<br>D6 | DD | FD |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | C8 | C8 |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | d  | d  |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | D6 | D6 |
|                              | 3 |                     | C8<br>DF | C8<br>D8 | C8<br>09 | C8<br>DA | C8<br>DS | C8<br>DC | C8<br>DD             | C8<br>DE | DD | FD |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | C8 | C8 |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | d  | d  |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | DE | DE |
|                              | 4 |                     | C8<br>E7 | C8<br>E0 | C8<br>E1 | C8<br>E2 | C8<br>E3 | C8<br>E4 | C8<br>E5             | C8<br>E6 | DD | FD |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | C8 | C8 |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | d  | d  |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | E6 | E6 |
|                              | 5 |                     | C8<br>EF | C8<br>E8 | C8<br>E9 | C8<br>EA | C8<br>EB | C8<br>EC | C8<br>ED             | C8<br>EE | DD | FD |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | C8 | C8 |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | d  | d  |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | EE | EE |
|                              | 6 |                     | C8<br>F7 | C8<br>F0 | C8<br>F1 | C8<br>F2 | C8<br>F3 | C8<br>F4 | C8<br>FS             | C8<br>F6 | DD | FD |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | C8 | C8 |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | d  | d  |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | F6 | F6 |
|                              | 7 |                     | C8<br>FF | C8<br>F8 | C8<br>F9 | C8<br>FA | C8<br>FB | C8<br>FC | C8<br>FD             | C8<br>FE | DD | FD |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | C8 | C8 |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | d  | d  |
|                              |   |                     |          |          |          |          |          |          |                      |          | FE | FE |

Register addressing can specify the Accumulator or any general-purpose register on which an operation is to be performed. Register Indirect and Indexed addressing are available for operations at external memory locations. Bit test operations set the Zero flag (Z) if the tested bit is a 0.

---

► **Note:** Descriptions of the [Bit Set, Reset, and Test Group](#) instructions begin on page 242.

---

## Jump, Call, and Return

Table 15 lists all of the jump, call, and return instructions implemented in the Z80 CPU. A jump is a branch in a program in which the program counter is loaded with a 16-bit value as specified by one of the three available addressing modes (Immediate Extended, Relative, or Register Indirect). In Table 15, the jump group includes several conditions that can be specified before the jump is made. If these conditions are not met, the program merely continues with the next sequential instruction. The conditions are all dependent on the data in the Flag Register. The immediate extended addressing is used to jump to any location in the memory. This instruction requires three bytes (i.e., two bytes designated to specifying the 16-bit address), with the low-order address byte first, followed by the high-order address byte.

An example of an unconditional jump to memory location 3E32h is shown in Figure 40.

|           |    |                    |
|-----------|----|--------------------|
| Address A | C3 | Op Code            |
| A+1       | 32 | low-order Address  |
| A+2       | 3E | high-order Address |

**Figure 40. Example of an Unconditional Jump Sequence**

The Relative Jump instruction uses only two bytes, the second byte is a signed two's complement displacement from the existing Program Counter. This displacement can be in the range of +129 to -126 and is measured from the address of the instruction op code.



Table 15. Jump, Call, and Return Group

|   |                    |                | Condition    |              |               |              |              |                |               |              |              |            |
|---|--------------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|------------|
|   |                    |                | Un-<br>Cond. | Carry        | Non-<br>Carry | Zero         | Non-<br>Zero | Parity<br>Even | Parity<br>Odd | Sign<br>Neg  | Sign<br>Pos  | Reg<br>B'0 |
| JUMP<br>JP  | IMMED.<br>EXT.     | nn             | C3<br>n<br>n | D8<br>n<br>n | D2<br>n<br>n  | CA<br>n<br>n | C2<br>n<br>n | EA<br>n<br>n   | E2<br>n<br>n  | FA<br>n<br>n | F2<br>n<br>n |            |
| JUMP<br>JR  | RELATIVE           | PC+e           | 18<br>e-2    | 38<br>e-2    | 30<br>e-2     | 28<br>e-2    | 20<br>e-2    |                |               |              |              |            |
| JUMP<br>JP  | Register<br>INDIR. | (HL)           | EB           |              |               |              |              |                |               |              |              |            |
|   |                    | (IX)           | DD<br>E9     |              |               |              |              |                |               |              |              |            |
|   |                    | (IY)           | FD<br>E9     |              |               |              |              |                |               |              |              |            |
| CALL  | IMMED.<br>EXT.     | nn             | CD<br>n<br>n | DC<br>n<br>n | D4<br>n<br>n  | CC<br>n<br>n | C4<br>n<br>n | EC<br>n<br>n   | E4<br>n<br>n  | FC<br>n<br>n | F4<br>n<br>n |            |
| Decrement B,<br>Jump If Non-Zero<br>DJNZ          | RELATIVE           | PC+e           |              |              |               |              |              |                |               |              |              | 10<br>e-2  |
| Return<br>RE                                      | REGISTER<br>INDIR. | (SP)<br>(SP+1) | C9           | D8           | D0            | C8           | C0           | E8             | E0            | F8           | F0           |            |
| Return From<br>Interrupt<br>RETI                  |                    |                | ED<br>4D     |              |               |              |              |                |               |              |              |            |
| Return From Non-<br>Maskable<br>Interrupt<br>RETN |                    |                | ED<br>45     |              |               |              |              |                |               |              |              |            |

► **Note:** Descriptions of the [Jump Group](#) instructions begin on page 261.

Three types of Register Indirect jumps are also included. These instructions are implemented by loading the register pair HL or one of the index registers IX or IY directly into the Program Counter. This feature allows for program jumps to be a function of previous calculations.

A Call is a special form of a jump in which the address of the byte following the call instruction is pushed onto the stack before the jump is made. A return instruction is the reverse of a call because the data on the top of the stack is popped directly into the Pro-

gram Counter to form a jump address. The call and return instructions allow for simple subroutine and interrupt handling. Two special return instructions are included in the Z80 family of microprocessors. The return from interrupt instruction (RETI) and the return from nonmaskable interrupt (RETN) are treated in the CPU as an unconditional return identical to the op code C9h. The difference is that (RETI) can be used at the end of an interrupt routine and all Z80 peripheral chips recognize the execution of this instruction for proper control of nested priority interrupt handling. This instruction, coupled with the Z80 CPU's peripheral devices implementation, simplifies the normal return from nested interrupt. Without this feature, the following software sequence is necessary to inform the interrupting device that the interrupt routine is completed:

```

Disable Interrupt    ; Prevent interrupt before routine is exited.
LD A, n             ; Notify peripheral that service routine
                   ; is complete.

OUT n, A
Enable Interrupt
Return
  
```

This seven-byte sequence can be replaced with the one-byte EI instruction and the two-byte RETI instruction in the Z80 CPU. This instruction is important because interrupt service time often must be minimized.

The DJNZ instruction is used to facilitate program loop control. This two-byte relative jump instruction decrements Register B, and the jump occurs if Register B is not decremented to 0. The relative displacement is expressed as a signed two's complement number. A simple example of its use is shown in Table 16.

**Table 16. Example Usage of the DJNZ Instruction**

| Address    | Instruction                          | Comments                       |
|------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| N, N+1     | LD B, 7                              | ; Set B Register to count of 7 |
| N+2 to N+9 | (Perform a sequence of instructions) | ; Loop to be performed 7 times |
| N+10, N+11 | DJNZ - 8                             | ; To jump from N+12 to N+2     |
| N + 12     | (Next instruction)                   |                                |

Table 17 lists the eight op codes for the Restart instruction, which is a single-byte call to any of the eight addresses listed. A simple mnemonic for each of these eight calls is also listed. The Restart instruction is useful for frequently-used routines due to its minimal memory consumption.

**Table 17. Restart Group**

|              |       | Op Code |        |
|--------------|-------|---------|--------|
| CALL Address | 0000h | C7      | RST 0  |
|              | 0008h | CF      | RST 8  |
|              | 0010h | D7      | RST 16 |
|              | 0018h | DF      | RST 24 |
|              | 0020h | E7      | RST 32 |
|              | 0028h | EF      | RST 40 |
|              | 0030h | F7      | RST 48 |
|              | 0038h | FF      | RST 56 |

---

► **Note:** Descriptions of the [Call and Return Group](#) instructions begin on page 280.

---

## Input/Output

The Z80 CPU contains an extensive set of input and output instructions, as shown in Tables 18 and 19. The addressing of the input or output device can be either absolute or Register Indirect, using the C register. In the Register Indirect addressing mode, data can be transferred between the I/O devices and any of the internal registers. In addition, eight block transfer instructions are implemented. These instructions are similar to the memory block transfers except that they use register pair HL for a pointer to the memory source (output commands) or destination (input commands) while Register B is used as a byte counter. Register C holds the address of the port for which the input or output command is required. Because Register B is eight bits in length, the I/O block transfer command handles up to 256 bytes.

In the IN A and OUT n, A instructions, the I/O device's *n* address appears in the lower half of the address bus (A7–A0), while the Accumulator content is transferred in the upper half of the address bus. In all Register Indirect input output instructions, including block I/O transfers, the contents of the C Register are transferred to the lower half of the address bus (device address) while the contents of Register B are transferred to the upper half of the address bus.

Table 18. Input Group

|  |                     |      | Immediate<br>(n) | Register<br>Indirect)<br>(c) |                            |
|--|---------------------|------|------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Input<br>IN                                  | Register<br>Address | A    | DB<br>n          | ED<br>7B                     |                            |
|  |                     | B    |                  | ED<br>40                     |                            |
|  |                     | C    |                  | ED<br>48                     |                            |
|  |                     | D    |                  | ED<br>50                     |                            |
|  |                     | E    |                  | ED<br>58                     |                            |
|  |                     | H    |                  | ED<br>60                     |                            |
|  |                     | L    |                  | ED<br>68                     |                            |
| INI: input &<br>inc HL, Dec B                | Register<br>Indir   | (HL) |                  | ED<br>A2                     | Block<br>Input<br>Commands |
| INIR: INP, Inc HL,<br>Dec B, repeat if B≠0   |                     |      |                  | ED<br>B2                     |                            |
| IND: input & Inc<br>Dec HL, Dec B            |                     |      |                  | ED<br>AA                     |                            |
| INDR: input, Dec HL,<br>Dec B, repeat if B≠0 |                     |      |                  | ED<br>BA                     |                            |

Table 19. 8-Bit Arithmetic and Logic

|       |                          |     |          | Source   |          |          |          |          |          |                   |          |                            |
|-------|--------------------------|-----|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|-------------------|----------|----------------------------|
|       |                          |     |          | Register |          |          |          |          |          | Register Indirect |          |                            |
|       |                          |     |          | A        | B        | C        | D        | E        | H        | L                 | (HL)     |                            |
| 11OUT | Immediate                | (n) | D3<br>n  |          |          |          |          |          |          |                   |          |                            |
|       | Register Indirect        | (c) | ED<br>79 | ED<br>41 | ED<br>49 | ED<br>51 | ED<br>59 | ED<br>61 | ED<br>69 |                   |          |                            |
|       |                          |     |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |                   | ED<br>A3 | Block<br>Output<br>Command |
|       |                          |     |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |                   | ED<br>B3 |                            |
|       |                          |     |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |                   | ED<br>AB |                            |
|       |                          |     |          |          |          |          |          |          | ED<br>BB |                   |          |                            |
|       | Port Destination Address |     |          |          |          |          |          |          |          |                   |          |                            |

► **Note:** Descriptions of the [Input and Output Group](#) instructions begin on page 294.

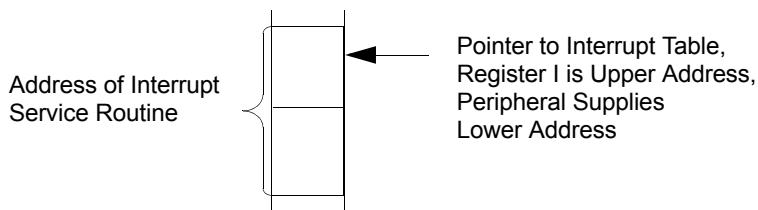
## CPU Control Group

Table 20 shows the six general-purpose CPU control instructions. The HALT instruction suspends CPU operation until a subsequent interrupt is received, while the DI and EI are used to lock out and enable interrupts. The three interrupt mode commands set the CPU to any of the three available interrupt response modes; each of these is described in the next paragraph. The NOP instruction has no function.

**Table 20. Miscellaneous CPU Control**

|                       |          |   |
|-----------------------|----------|---|
| NOP                   | 00       |   |
| HALT                  | 76       |   |
| Disable INT (EI)      | F3       |   |
| Enable INT (EI)       | FB       |   |
| Set INT Mode 0<br>IM0 | ED<br>46 | 8080A mode  |
| Set INT Mode 1<br>IM1 | ED<br>56 | Call to address 0038h   |
| Set INT Mode 2<br>IM2 | ED<br>5E | Indirect call using Register I and B bits from<br>INTER device as a pointer |

If Mode 0 is set, the interrupting device can insert any instruction on the data bus and allow the CPU to execute it. Mode 1 is a simplified mode in which the CPU automatically executes a restart (RST) at address 0038h so that no external hardware is required (the old Program Counter content is pushed onto the stack). Mode 2 is the most powerful because it allows for an indirect call to any location in memory. With this mode, the CPU forms a 16-bit memory address in which the upper eight bits are the contents of Register I, and the lower eight bits are supplied by the interrupting device. This address points to the first of two sequential bytes in a table in which the address of the service routine is located, as shown in Figure 41. The CPU automatically obtains the starting address and performs a CALL instruction to this address.



**Figure 41. Mode 2 Interrupt Command**

# Z80 Instruction Set

This chapter provides a description of the assembly language instructions available with the Z80 CPU.

## Z80 Assembly Language

Assembly language allows the user to write a program without concern for memory addresses or machine instruction formats. It uses symbolic addresses to identify memory locations and mnemonic codes (op codes and operands) to represent the instructions. Labels (symbols) are assigned to a particular instruction step in a source program to identify that step as an entry point for use in subsequent instructions. Operands following each instruction represent storage locations, registers, or constant values. The assembly language also includes assembler directives that supplement the machine instruction. A pseudo-op, for example, is a statement that is not translated to a machine instruction, but rather is interpreted as a directive that controls the assembly process.

A program written in assembly language is called a *source program*, which consists of symbolic commands called *statements*. Each statement is written on a single line and can consist of one to four entries: A label field, an operation field, an operand field, and a comment field. The source program is processed by the assembler to obtain a machine language program (object program) that can be executed directly by the Z80 CPU.

Zilog provides several assemblers that differ in the features offered. Both absolute and relocatable assemblers are available with the Development and Micro-computer Systems. The absolute assembler is contained in base level software operating in a 16K memory space, while the relocating assembler is part of the RIO environment operating in a 32K memory space.

## Z80 Status Indicator Flags

The Flag registers, F and F', supply information to the user about the status of the Z80 CPU at any particular time. The bit positions for each flag are listed in Table 21 and defined in

**Table 21. Flag Register Bit Positions**

| Bit      | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2   | 1 | 0 |
|----------|---|---|---|---|---|-----|---|---|
| Position | S | Z | X | H | X | P/V | N | C |

**Table 22. Flag Definitions**

| Symbol | Field Name           |
|--------|----------------------|
| C      | Carry Flag           |
| N      | Add/Subtract         |
| P/V    | Parity/Overflow Flag |
| H      | Half Carry Flag      |
| Z      | Zero Flag            |
| S      | Sign Flag            |
| X      | Not Used             |

Each of these two Flag registers contains 6 bits of status information that are set or cleared by CPU operations; bits 3 and 5 are not used. Four of these bits (C, P/V, Z, and S) can be tested for use with conditional JUMP, CALL, or RETURN instructions. The H and N flags cannot be tested; these two flags are used for BCD arithmetic.

## Carry Flag

The Carry Flag (C) is set or cleared depending on the operation being performed. For ADD instructions that generate a Carry, and for SUB instructions that generate a Borrow, the Carry Flag is set. The Carry Flag is reset by an ADD instruction that does not generate a Carry, and by a SUB instruction that does not generate a Borrow. This saved Carry facilitates software routines for extended precision arithmetic. Additionally, the DAA instruction sets the Carry Flag if the conditions for making the decimal adjustment are met.

For the RLA, RRA, RLS, and RRS instructions, the Carry bit is used as a link between the least-significant byte (LSB) and the most-significant byte (MSB) for any register or memory location. During the RLCA, RLC, and SLA instructions, the Carry flag contains the final value shifted out of bit 7 of any register or memory location. During the RRCA, RRC, SRA, and SRL instructions, the Carry flag contains the final value shifted out of bit 0 of any register or memory location.

For the logical instructions AND, OR, and XOR, the Carry flag is reset.

The Carry flag can also be set by the Set Carry Flag (SCF) instruction and complemented by the Complement Carry Flag (CCF) instruction.

## Add/Subtract Flag

The Add/Subtract Flag (N) is used by the Decimal Adjust Accumulator instruction (DAA) to distinguish between the ADD and SUB instructions. For ADD instructions, N is cleared to 0. For SUB instructions, N is set to 1.



## Decimal Adjust Accumulator Flag

The Decimal Adjust Accumulator (DAA) instruction uses this flag to distinguish between ADD and SUBTRACT instructions. For all ADD instructions, N sets to 0. For all SUBTRACT instructions, N sets to 1.

## Parity/Overflow Flag

The Parity/Overflow (P/V) Flag is set to a specific state depending on the operation being performed. For arithmetic operations, this flag indicates an overflow condition when the result in the Accumulator is greater than the maximum possible number (+127) or is less than the minimum possible number (-128). This overflow condition is determined by examining the sign bits of the operands.

For addition, operands with different signs never cause overflow. When adding operands with similar signs and the result contains a different sign, the Overflow Flag is set, as shown in the following example.

|      |   |      |      |        |     |
|------|---|------|------|--------|-----|
| +120 | = | 0111 | 1000 | ADDEND |     |
| +105 | = | 0110 | 1001 | AUGEND |     |
| +225 | = | 1110 | 0001 | (-95)  | SUM |

The two numbers added together result in a number that exceeds +127 and the two positive operands result in a negative number (-95), which is incorrect. The Overflow Flag is therefore set.

For subtraction, overflow can occur for operands of unlike signs. Operands of alike signs never cause overflow, as shown in the following example.

|     |      |      |      |            |  |
|-----|------|------|------|------------|--|
|     | +127 | 0111 | 1111 | MINUEND    |  |
| (-) | -64  | 1100 | 0000 | SUBTRAHEND |  |
|     | +191 | 1011 | 1111 | DIFFERENCE |  |

The minuend sign has changed from a positive to a negative, resulting in an incorrect difference; the Overflow Flag is set.

Another method for identifying an overflow is to observe the Carry to and out of the sign bit. If there is a Carry in and no Carry out, or if there is no Carry in and a Carry out, then an Overflow has occurred.

This flag is also used with logical operations and rotate instructions to indicate the resulting parity is even. The number of 1 bits in a byte are counted. If the total is Odd, ODD parity is flagged (i.e., P = 0). If the total is even, even parity is flagged (i.e., P = 1).

During the CPI, CPIX, CPD, and CPDR search instructions and the LDI, LDIR, LDD, and LDDR block transfer instructions, the P/V Flag monitors the state of the Byte Count (BC) Register. When decrementing, if the byte counter decrements to 0, the flag is cleared to 0; otherwise the flag is set to 1.

During the LD A, I and LD A, R instructions, the P/V Flag is set with the value of the interrupt enable flip-flop (IFF2) for storage or testing.

When inputting a byte from an I/O device with an IN *r*, (C) instruction, the P/V Flag is adjusted to indicate data parity.

## Half Carry Flag

The Half Carry Flag (H) is set (1) or cleared (0) depending on the Carry and Borrow status between bits 3 and 4 of an 8-bit arithmetic operation. This flag is used by the Decimal Adjust Accumulator (DAA) instruction to correct the result of a packed BCD add or subtract operation. The H Flag is set (1) or cleared (0) as shown in Table 23.

**Table 23. Half Carry Flag Add/Subtract Operations**

| H Flag | Add                                 | Subtract                    |
|--------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1      | A Carry occurs from bit 3 to bit 4  | A Borrow from bit 4 occurs  |
| 0      | No Carry occurs from bit 3 to bit 4 | No Borrow from bit 4 occurs |

## Zero Flag

The Zero Flag (Z) is set (1) or cleared (0) if the result generated by the execution of certain instructions is 0.

For 8-bit arithmetic and logical operations, the Z flag is set to a 1 if the resulting byte in the Accumulator is 0. If the byte is not 0, the Z flag is reset to 0.

For Compare (search) instructions, the Z flag is set to 1 if the value in the Accumulator is equal to the value in the memory location indicated by the value of the register pair HL.

When testing a bit in a register or memory location, the Z flag contains the complemented state of the indicated bit (see *Bit b, r* in the [Bit Set, Reset, and Test Group](#) section on page 242).

When inputting or outputting a byte between a memory location and an INI, IND, OUTI, or OUTD I/O device, if the result of decrementing Register B is 0, then the Z flag is 1; otherwise, the Z flag is 0. Additionally, for byte inputs from I/O devices using IN *r*, (C), the Z flag is set to indicate a 0-byte input.

## Sign Flag

The Sign Flag (S) stores the state of the most-significant bit of the Accumulator (bit 7). When the Z80 CPU performs arithmetic operations on signed numbers, the binary twos-complement notation is used to represent and process numeric information. A positive number is identified by a 0 in Bit 7. A negative number is identified by a 1. The binary equivalent of the magnitude of a positive number is stored in bits 0 to 6 for a total range of from 0 to 127. A negative number is represented by the twos complement of the equivalent positive number. The total range for negative numbers is from -1 to -128.

When inputting a byte from an I/O device to a register using an IN *r*, (*C*) instruction, the S Flag indicates either positive (S = 0) or negative (S = 1) data.

## Z80 Instruction Description

Execution time (E.T.) for each instruction is provided in microseconds for an assumed 4MHz clock. Total machine cycles (M) are indicated with total clock periods, or *T states*. Also indicated are the number of T states for each M cycle, as shown in the following example.

| M Cycles | T States     | E.T. |
|----------|--------------|------|
| 2        | 7(4,3) 4 MHz | 1.75 |

This example indicates that the instruction consists of two machine cycles. The first cycle contains 4 clock periods/T states). The second cycle contains 3 clock periods, for a total of 7 clock periods/T states. The instruction executes in 1.75 microseconds.

In the register format of each of the instructions that follow, the most-significant bit to the left and the least-significant bit to the right.

## 8-Bit Load Group

The following 8-bit load instructions are each described in this section. Simply click to jump to an instruction's description to learn more.

[LD r, r'](#) – see page 71

[LD r,n](#) – see page 72

[LD r, \(HL\)](#) – see page 74

[LD r, \(IX+d\)](#) – see page 75

[LD r, \(IY+d\)](#) – see page 77

[LD \(HL\), r](#) – see page 79

[LD \(IX+d\), r](#) – see page 81

[LD \(IY+d\), r](#) – see page 83

[LD \(HL\), n](#) – see page 85

[LD \(IX+d\), n](#) – see page 86

[LD \(IY+d\), n](#) – see page 87

[LD A, \(BC\)](#) – see page 88

[LD A, \(DE\)](#) – see page 89

[LD A, \(mn\)](#) – see page 90

[LD \(BC\), A](#) – see page 91

[LD \(DE\), A](#) – see page 92

[LD \(mn\), A](#) – see page 93

[LD A, I](#) – see page 94

[LD A, R](#) – see page 95

[LD I,A](#) – see page 96

[LD R, A](#) – see page 97

## LD $r, r'$

### Operation

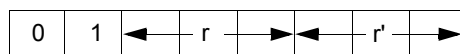
$r, \leftarrow r'$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

$r, r'$



### Description

The contents of any register  $r'$  are loaded to any other register  $r$ .  $r, r'$  identifies any of the registers A, B, C, D, E, H, or L, assembled as follows in the object code:

| Register | r, C |
|----------|------|
| A        | 111  |
| B        | 000  |
| C        | 001  |
| D        | 010  |
| E        | 011  |
| H        | 100  |
| L        | 101  |

| M Cycles | T States | MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 1        | 4        | 1.0      |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the H Register contains the number 8Ah, and the E register contains 10h, the instruction LD H, E results in both registers containing 10h.

## LD *r,n*

### Operation

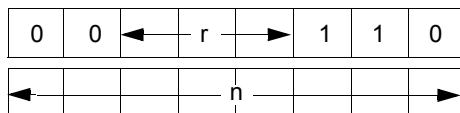
$r \leftarrow n$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

*r, n*



### Description

The 8-bit integer *n* is loaded to any register *r*, in which *r* identifies registers A, B, C, D, E, H, or L, assembled as follows in the object code:

| Register | <i>r</i> | M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|------------|
| A        | 111      | 2        | 7 (4, 3) | 1.75       |
| B        | 000      |          |          |            |
| C        | 001      |          |          |            |
| D        | 010      |          |          |            |
| E        | 011      |          |          |            |
| H        | 100      |          |          |            |
| L        | 101      |          |          |            |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### **Example**

Upon the execution of an LD *E*, A5h instruction, Register E contains A5h.

## LD *r*, (HL)

### Operation

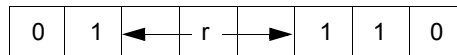
$r \leftarrow (HL)$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

*r*, (HL)



### Description

The 8-bit contents of memory location (HL) are loaded to register *r*, in which *r* identifies registers A, B, C, D, E, H, or L, assembled as follows in the object code:

| Register | r   |
|----------|-----|
| A        | 111 |
| B        | 000 |
| C        | 001 |
| D        | 010 |
| E        | 011 |
| H        | 100 |
| L        | 101 |

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 7 (4, 3) | 1.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If register pair HL contains the number 75A1h, and memory address 75A1h contains byte 58h, the execution of LD C, (HL) results in 58h in Register C.



## LD $r, (IX+d)$

### Operation

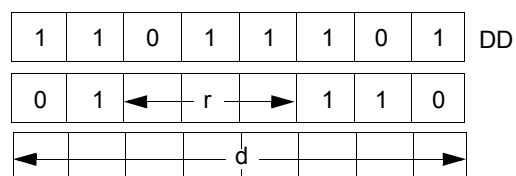
$r \leftarrow (IX+d)$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

$r, (IX+d)$



### Description

The  $(IX+d)$  operand (i.e., the contents of Index Register IX summed with two's-complement displacement integer  $d$ ) is loaded to register  $r$ , in which  $r$  identifies registers A, B, C, D, E, H, or L, assembled as follows in the object code:

| Register | r   |
|----------|-----|
| A        | 111 |
| B        | 000 |
| C        | 001 |
| D        | 010 |
| E        | 011 |
| H        | 100 |
| L        | 101 |

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 2.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If Index Register IX contains the number 25AFh, the instruction LD B, (IX+19h) allows the calculation of the sum 25AFh + 19h, which points to memory location 25C8h. If this address contains byte 39h, the instruction results in Register B also containing 39h.

## LD $r, (IY+d)$

### Operation

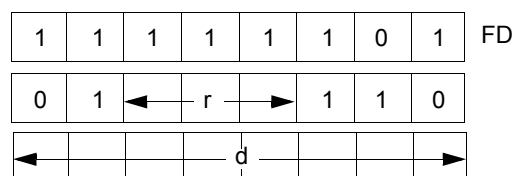
$r \leftarrow (IY+D)$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

$r, (IY+d)$



### Description

The operand  $(IY+d)$  loads the contents of Index Register IY summed with two's-complement displacement integer,  $d$ , to register  $r$ , in which  $r$  identifies registers A, B, C, D, E, H, or L, assembled as follows in the object code:

| Register | r   |
|----------|-----|
| A        | 111 |
| B        | 000 |
| C        | 001 |
| D        | 010 |
| E        | 011 |
| H        | 100 |
| L        | 101 |

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If Index Register IY contains the number 25AFh, the instruction LD B, (IY+19h) allows the calculation of the sum 25AFh + 19h, which points to memory location 25C8h. If this address contains byte 39h, the instruction results in Register B also containing 39h.

## LD (HL), r

### Operation

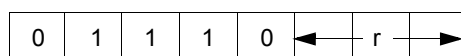
(HL) ← r

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

(HL), r



### Description

The contents of register *r* are loaded to the memory location specified by the contents of the HL register pair. The *r* symbol identifies registers A, B, C, D, E, H, or L, assembled as follows in the object code:

| Register | r   |
|----------|-----|
| A        | 111 |
| B        | 000 |
| C        | 001 |
| D        | 010 |
| E        | 011 |
| H        | 100 |
| L        | 101 |

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 7 (4, 3) | 1.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the contents of register pair HL specify memory location 2146h and Register B contains byte 29h, then upon the execution of an LD (*HL*), *B* instruction, memory address 2146h also contains 29h.

## LD (IX+d), r

### Operation

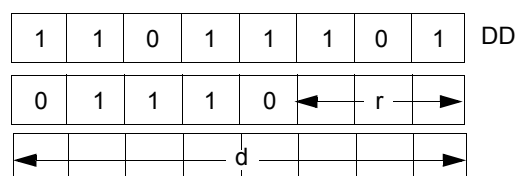
$(IX+d) \leftarrow r$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

$(IX+d), r$



### Description

The contents of register  $r$  are loaded to the memory address specified by the contents of Index Register IX summed with  $d$ , a two's-complement displacement integer. The  $r$  symbol identifies registers A, B, C, D, E, H, or L, assembled as follows in the object code:

| Register | r   |
|----------|-----|
| A        | 111 |
| B        | 000 |
| C        | 001 |
| D        | 010 |
| E        | 011 |
| H        | 100 |
| L        | 101 |

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the C register contains byte 1Ch, and Index Register IX contains 3100h, then the instruction LID ( $IX + 6h$ ), C performs the sum  $3100h + 6h$  and loads 1Ch to memory location 3106h.



## LD (IY+d), r

### Operation

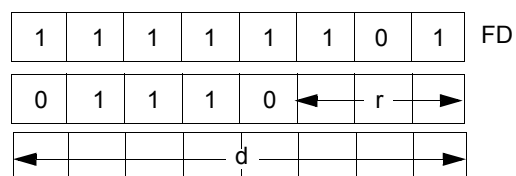
$(IY+d) \leftarrow r$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

$(IY+d), r$



### Description

The contents of register  $r$  are loaded to the memory address specified by the sum of the contents of Index Register IY and  $d$ , a two's-complement displacement integer. The  $r$  symbol is specified according to the following table.

| Register | r   |
|----------|-----|
| A        | 111 |
| B        | 000 |
| C        | 001 |
| D        | 010 |
| E        | 011 |
| H        | 100 |
| L        | 101 |

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the C register contains byte 48h, and Index Register IY contains 2A11h, then the instruction LD (*IY* + 4h), C performs the sum 2A11h + 4h, and loads 48h to memory location 2A15.

## LD (HL), n

### Operation

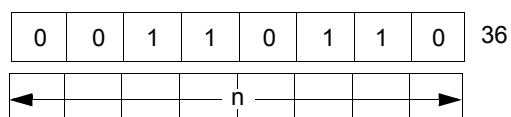
(HL) ← n

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

(HL), n



### Description

The *n* integer is loaded to the memory address specified by the contents of the HL register pair.

| M Cycles | T States     | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------|------------|
| 3        | 10 (4, 3, 3) | 2.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the HL register pair contains 4444h, the instruction LD (HL), 28h results in the memory location 4444h containing byte 28h.

## LD (IX+d), n

### Operation

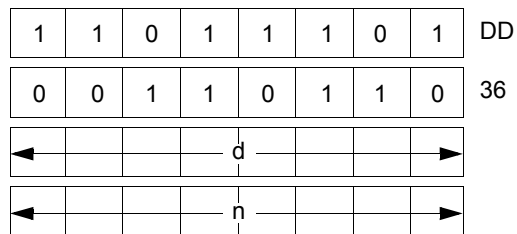
$(IX+d) \leftarrow n$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

$(IX+d), n$



### Description

The  $n$  operand is loaded to the memory address specified by the sum of Index Register IX and the two's complement displacement operand  $d$ .

| M Cycles | T States         | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|------------------|------------|
| 5        | 19 (4, 4, 3,5,3) | 4.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If Index Register IX contains the number 219Ah, then upon execution of an LD (IX+5h), 5Ah instruction, byte 5Ah is contained in memory address 219Fh.

## LD (IY+d), n

### Operation

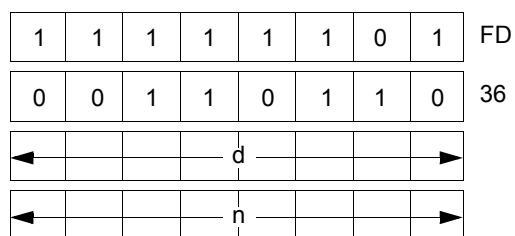
$(IY+d) \leftarrow n$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

$(IY+d), n$



### Description

The  $n$  integer is loaded to the memory location specified by the contents of Index Register summed with the two's-complement displacement integer,  $d$ .

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 2.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If Index Register IY contains the number A940h, the instruction LD (IY+10h), 97h results in byte 97h in memory location A950h.

## LD A, (BC)

### Operation

$A \leftarrow (BC)$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

A, (BC)

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0A |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

### Description

The contents of the memory location specified by the contents of the BC register pair are loaded to the Accumulator.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 7 (4, 3) | 1.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the BC register pair contains the number 4747h, and memory address 4747h contains byte 12h, then the instruction LD A, (BC) results in byte 12h in Register A.

## LD A, (DE)

### Operation

$A \leftarrow (DE)$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

A, (DE)

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1A |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

### Description

The contents of the memory location specified by the register pair DE are loaded to the Accumulator.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 7 (4, 3) | 1.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the DE register pair contains the number 30A2h and memory address 30A2h contains byte 22h, then the instruction LD A, (DE) results in byte 22h in Register A.





## LD (BC), A

### Operation

(BC) ← A

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

(BC), A

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

 02

### Description

The contents of the Accumulator are loaded to the memory location specified by the contents of the register pair BC.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 7 (4, 3) | 1.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the Accumulator contains 7Ah and the BC register pair contains 1212h the instruction LD (BC), A results in 7Ah in memory location 1212h.

## LD (DE), A

### Operation

(DE) ← A

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

(DE), A

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 12 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

### Description

The contents of the Accumulator are loaded to the memory location specified by the contents of the DE register pair.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 7 (4, 3) | 1.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If register pair DE contains 1128h and the Accumulator contains byte A0h, then the execution of a LD (DE), A instruction results in A0h being stored in memory location 1128h.

## LD (nn), A

### Operation

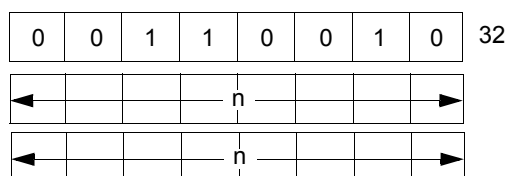
(nn) ← A

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

(nn), A



### Description

The contents of the Accumulator are loaded to the memory address specified by the operand *nn*. The first *n* operand after the op code is the low-order byte of *nn*.

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 13 (4, 3, 3, 3) | 3.25       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the Accumulator contains byte D7h, then executing an LD (3141h), AD7h instruction results in memory location 3141h.

## LD A, I

### Operation

$A \leftarrow I$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

A, I

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 57 |

### Description

The contents of the Interrupt Vector Register I are loaded to the Accumulator.

| M Cycles | T States | MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 2        | 9 (4, 5) | 2.25     |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if the I Register is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if the I Register is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is reset.

P/V contains contents of IFF2.

N is reset.

C is not affected.

If an interrupt occurs during execution of this instruction, the Parity flag contains a 0.

## LD A, R

### Operation

$A \leftarrow R$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

A, R

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 5F |

### Description

The contents of Memory Refresh Register R are loaded to the Accumulator.

| M Cycles | T States | MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 2        | 9 (4, 5) | 2.25     |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if, R-Register is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if the R Register is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is reset.

P/V contains contents of IFF2.

N is reset.

C is not affected.

If an interrupt occurs during execution of this instruction, the parity flag contains a 0.

## LD I,A

### Operation

$I \leftarrow A$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

$I, A$

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 47 |

### Description

The contents of the Accumulator are loaded to the Interrupt Control Vector Register, I.

| M Cycles | T States | MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 2        | 9 (4, 5) | 2.25     |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

## LD R, A

### Operation

$R \leftarrow A$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

R, A

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4F |

### Description

The contents of the Accumulator are loaded to the Memory Refresh register R.

| M Cycles | T States | MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 2        | 9 (4, 5) | 2.25     |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

## 16-Bit Load Group

The following 16-bit load instructions are each described in this section. Simply click to jump to an instruction's description to learn more.

[LD dd, nn](#) – see page 99

[LD IX, nn](#) – see page 100

[LD IY, nn](#) – see page 101

[LD HL, \(nn\)](#) – see page 102

[LD dd, \(nn\)](#) – see page 103

[LD IX, \(nn\)](#) – see page 105

[LD IY, \(nn\)](#) – see page 106

[LD \(nn\), HL](#) – see page 107

[LD \(nn\), dd](#) – see page 108

[LD \(nn\), IX](#) – see page 110

[LD \(nn\), IY](#) – see page 111

[LD SP, HL](#) – see page 112

[LD SP, IX](#) – see page 113

[LD SP, IY](#) – see page 114

[PUSH qq](#) – see page 115

[PUSH IX](#) – see page 117

[PUSH IY](#) – see page 118

[POP qq](#) – see page 119

[POP IX](#) – see page 121

[POP IY](#) – see page 122



## LD *dd, nn*

### Operation

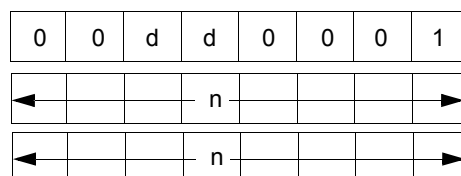
$dd \leftarrow nn$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

*dd, nn*



### Description

The 2-byte integer *nn* is loaded to the *dd* register pair, in which *dd* defines the BC, DE, HL, or SP register pairs, assembled as follows in the object code:

| Pair | dd |
|------|----|
| BC   | 00 |
| DE   | 01 |
| HL   | 10 |
| SP   | 11 |

The first *n* operand after the op code is the low-order byte.

| M Cycles | T States     | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------|------------|
| 2        | 10 (4, 3, 3) | 2.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

Upon the execution of an LD *HL*, 5000h instruction, the HL register pair contains 5000h.

## LD IX, nn

### Operation

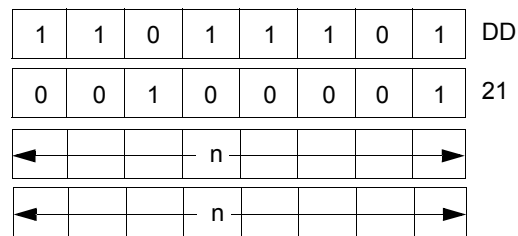
$IX \leftarrow nn$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

$IX, nn$



### Description

The  $n$  integer is loaded to Index Register IX. The first  $n$  operand after the op code is the low-order byte.

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 14 (4, 4, 3, 3) | 3.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

Upon the execution of an LD IX, 45A2h instruction, the index register contains integer 45A2h.

## LD IY, nn

### Operation

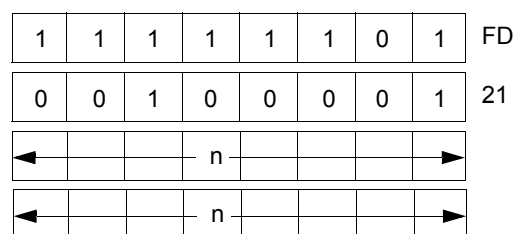
$IY \leftarrow nn$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

$IY, nn$



### Description

The  $nn$  integer is loaded to Index Register IY. The first  $n$  operand after the op code is the low-order byte.

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 14 (4, 4, 3, 3) | 3.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

Upon the execution of a LD IY, 7733h instruction, Index Register IY contains the integer 7733h.

## LD HL, (nn)

### Operation

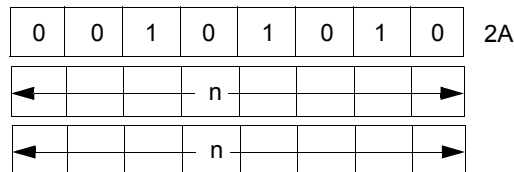
$H \leftarrow (nn+1), L \leftarrow (nn)$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

HL, (nn)



### Description

The contents of memory address (*nn*) are loaded to the low-order portion of register pair HL (Register L), and the contents of the next highest memory address (*nn+1*) are loaded to the high-order portion of HL (Register H). The first *n* operand after the op code is the low-order byte of *nn*.

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 16 (4, 3, 3, 3, 3) | 4.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If address 4545h contains 37h and address 4546h contains A1h, then upon the execution of an LD HL, (4545h) instruction, the HL register pair contains A137h.

## LD *dd*, (*nn*)

### Operation

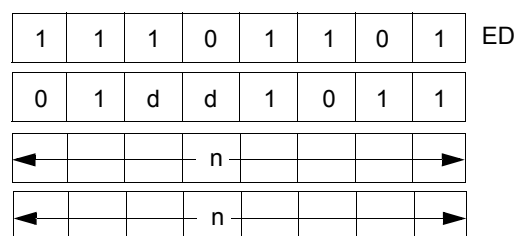
$ddh \leftarrow (nn+1)$   $ddl \leftarrow (nn)$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

*dd*, (*nn*)



### Description

The contents of address (*nn*) are loaded to the low-order portion of register pair *dd*, and the contents of the next highest memory address (*nn+1*) are loaded to the high-order portion of *dd*. Register pair *dd* defines BC, DE, HL, or SP register pairs, assembled as follows in the object code:

| Pair | dd |
|------|----|
| BC   | 00 |
| DE   | 01 |
| HL   | 10 |
| SP   | 11 |

The first *n* operand after the op code is the low-order byte of (*nn*).

| M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| 6        | 20 (4, 4, 3, 3, 3, 3) | 5.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If Address 2130h contains 65h and address 2131h contains 78h, then upon the execution of an LD *BC*, (2130h) instruction, the BC register pair contains 7865h.

## LD IX, (nn)

### Operation

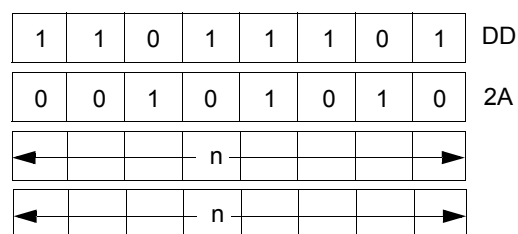
$IXh \leftarrow (nn+1), IXl \leftarrow (nn)$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

IX, (nn)



### Description

The contents of the address (*nn*) are loaded to the low-order portion of Index Register IX, and the contents of the next highest memory address (*nn+1*) are loaded to the high-order portion of IX. The first *n* operand after the op code is the low-order byte of *nn*.

| M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| 6        | 20 (4, 4, 3, 3, 3, 3) | 5.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If address 6666h contains 92h, and address 6667h contains DAh, then upon the execution of an LD IX, (6666h) instruction, Index Register IX contains DA92h.

## LD IY, (nn)

### Operation

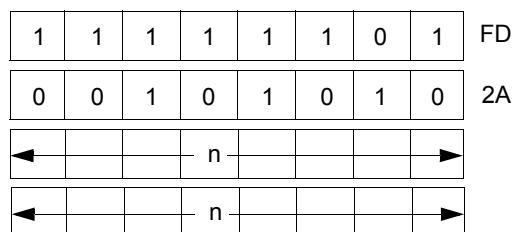
IYh  $\leftarrow$  (nn+1), IYl  $\leftarrow$  nn

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

IY, (nn)



### Description

The contents of address (nn) are loaded to the low-order portion of Index Register IY, and the contents of the next highest memory address (nn+1) are loaded to the high-order portion of IY. The first n operand after the op code is the low-order byte of nn.

| M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| 6        | 20 (4, 4, 3, 3, 3, 3) | 5.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If address 6666h contains 92h, and address 6667h contains DAh, then upon the execution of an LD IY, (6666h) instruction, Index Register IY contains DA92h.





## LD (nn), dd

### Operation

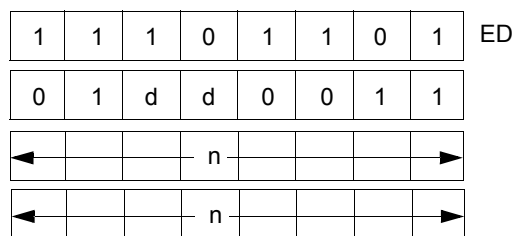
$(nn+1) \leftarrow ddh, (nn) \leftarrow ddl$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

(nn), dd



### Description

The low-order byte of register pair *dd* is loaded to memory address (*nn*); the upper byte is loaded to memory address (*nn+1*). Register pair *dd* defines either BC, DE, HL, or SP, assembled as follows in the object code:

| Pair | dd |
|------|----|
| BC   | 00 |
| DE   | 01 |
| HL   | 10 |
| SP   | 11 |

The first *n* operand after the op code is the low-order byte of a two byte memory address.

| M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| 6        | 20 (4, 4, 3, 3, 3, 3) | 5.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If register pair BC contains the number 4644h, the instruction LD (1000h), BC results in 44h in memory location 1000h, and 46h in memory location 1001h.

## LD (nn), IX

### Operation

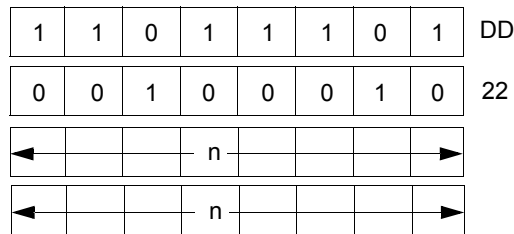
$(nn+1) \leftarrow IXh, (nn) \leftarrow IXl$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

$(nn), IX$



### Description

The low-order byte in Index Register IX is loaded to memory address  $(nn)$ ; the upper order byte is loaded to the next highest address  $(nn+1)$ . The first  $n$  operand after the op code is the low-order byte of  $nn$ .

| M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| 6        | 20 (4, 4, 3, 3, 3, 3) | 5.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If Index Register IX contains 5A30h, then upon the execution of an LD (4392h), IX instruction, memory location 4392h contains number 30h and location 4393h contains 5Ah.

## LD (nn), IY

### Operation

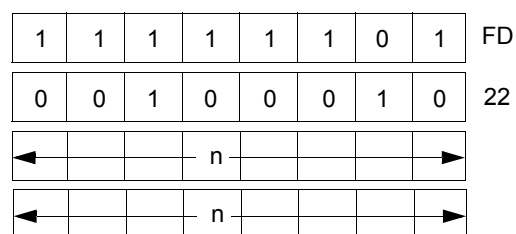
$(nn+1) \leftarrow IYh, (nn) \leftarrow IYl$

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

$(nn), IY$



### Description

The low-order byte in Index Register IY is loaded to memory address  $(nn)$ ; the upper order byte is loaded to memory location  $(nn+1)$ . The first  $n$  operand after the op code is the low-order byte of  $nn$ .

| M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| 6        | 20 (4, 4, 3, 3, 3, 3) | 5.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If Index Register IY contains 4174h, then upon the execution of an LD (8838h), IY instruction, memory location 8838h contains 74h and memory location 8839h contains 41h.

## ***LD SP, HL***

### **Operation**

SP ← HL

### **Op Code**

LD

### **Operands**

*SP, HL*

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | F9 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

### **Description**

The contents of the register pair HL are loaded to the Stack Pointer (SP).

| <b>M Cycles</b> | <b>T States</b> | <b>4 MHz E.T.</b> |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1               | 6               | 1.5               |

### **Condition Bits Affected**

None.

### **Example**

If the register pair HL contains 442Eh, then upon the execution of an LD *SP, HL* instruction, the Stack Pointer also contains 442Eh.

## LD SP, IX

### Operation

SP ← IX

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

SP, IX

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | DD |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | F9 |

### Description

The 2-byte contents of Index Register IX are loaded to the Stack Pointer (SP).

| M Cycles | T States  | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------|------------|
| 2        | 10 (4, 6) | 2.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If Index Register IX contains 98DAh, then upon the execution of an LD SP, IX instruction, the Stack Pointer also contains 98DAh.

## LD SP, IY

### Operation

SP ← IY

### Op Code

LD

### Operands

SP, IY

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | FD |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | F9 |

### Description

The 2-byte contents of Index Register IY are loaded to the Stack Pointer SP.

| M Cycles | T States  | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------|------------|
| 2        | 10 (4, 6) | 2.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If Index Register IY contains the integer A227h, then upon the execution of an LD SP, IY instruction, the Stack Pointer also contains A227h.



## **PUSH qq**

### **Operation**

$(SP - 2) \leftarrow qqL, (SP - 1) \leftarrow qqH$

### **Op Code**

PUSH

### **Operand**

*qq*

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 1 | q | q | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

### **Description**

The contents of the register pair *qq* are pushed to the external memory last-in, first-out (LIFO) stack. The Stack Pointer (SP) Register pair holds the 16-bit address of the current top of the Stack. This instruction first decrements SP and loads the high-order byte of register pair *qq* to the memory address specified by the SP. The SP is decremented again and loads the low-order byte of *qq* to the memory location corresponding to this new address in the SP. The operand *qq* identifies register pair BC, DE, HL, or AF, assembled as follows in the object code:

| <b>Pair</b> | <b>qq</b> |
|-------------|-----------|
| BC          | 00        |
| DE          | 01        |
| HL          | 10        |
| AF          | 11        |

| <b>M Cycles</b> | <b>T States</b> | <b>4 MHz E.T.</b> |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 3               | 11 (5, 3, 3)    | 2.75              |

### **Condition Bits Affected**

None.

### Example

If the AF Register pair contains 2233h and the Stack Pointer contains 1007h, then upon the execution of a PUSH *AF* instruction, memory address 1006h contains 22h, memory address 1005h contains 33h, and the Stack Pointer contains 1005h.

## ***PUSH IX***

### **Operation**

$(SP - 2) \leftarrow IXL, (SP - 1) \leftarrow IXH$

### **Op Code**

PUSH

### **Operand**

*IX*

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | DD |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | E5 |

### **Description**

The contents of Index Register IX are pushed to the external memory last-in, first-out (LIFO) stack. The Stack Pointer (SP) Register pair holds the 16-bit address of the current top of the Stack. This instruction first decrements SP and loads the high-order byte of IX to the memory address specified by SP; then decrements SP again and loads the low-order byte to the memory location corresponding to this new address in SP.

| <b>M Cycles</b> | <b>T States</b> | <b>4 MHz E.T.</b> |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 4               | 15 (4, 5, 3, 3) | 3.75              |

### **Condition Bits Affected**

None.

### **Example**

If Index Register IX contains 2233h and the Stack Pointer contains 1007h, then upon the execution of a PUSH *IX* instruction, memory address 1006h contains 22h, memory address 1005h contains 33h, and the Stack Pointer contains 1005h.

## ***PUSH IY***

### **Operation**

$(SP - 2) \leftarrow IYL, (SP - 1) \leftarrow IYH$

### **Op Code**

PUSH

### **Operand**

*IY*

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | FD |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | E5 |

### **Description**

The contents of Index Register *IY* are pushed to the external memory last-in, first-out (LIFO) stack. The Stack Pointer (SP) Register pair holds the 16-bit address of the current top of the Stack. This instruction first decrements the SP and loads the high-order byte of *IY* to the memory address specified by SP; then decrements SP again and loads the low-order byte to the memory location corresponding to this new address in SP.

| <b>M Cycles</b> | <b>T States</b> | <b>4 MHz E.T.</b> |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 4               | 15 (4, 5, 3, 3) | 3.75              |

### **Condition Bits Affected**

None.

### **Example**

If Index Register *IY* contains 2233h and the Stack Pointer contains 1007h, then upon the execution of a PUSH *IY* instruction, memory address 1006h contains 22h, memory address 1005h contains 33h, and the Stack Pointer contains 1005h.

## POP qq

### Operation

qqH ← (SP+1), qqL ← (SP)

### Op Code

POP

### Operand

qq

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 1 | q | q | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

### Description

The top two bytes of the external memory last-in, first-out (LIFO) stack are popped to register pair *qq*. The Stack Pointer (SP) Register pair holds the 16-bit address of the current top of the Stack. This instruction first loads to the low-order portion of *qq*, the byte at the memory location corresponding to the contents of SP; then SP is incremented and the contents of the corresponding adjacent memory location are loaded to the high-order portion of *qq* and the SP is now incremented again. The operand *qq* identifies register pair BC, DE, HL, or AF, assembled as follows in the object code:

| Pair | r  |
|------|----|
| BC   | 00 |
| DE   | 01 |
| HL   | 10 |
| AF   | 11 |

| M Cycles | T States     | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------|------------|
| 3        | 10 (4, 3, 3) | 2.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the Stack Pointer contains 1000h, memory location 1000h contains 55h, and location 1001h contains 33h, the instruction POP *HL* results in register pair HL containing 3355h, and the Stack Pointer containing 1002h.

## POP IX

### Operation

$IXH \leftarrow (SP+1), IXL \leftarrow (SP)$

### Op Code

POP

### Operand

IX

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | DD |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | E1 |

### Description

The top two bytes of the external memory last-in, first-out (LIFO) stack are popped to Index Register IX. The Stack Pointer (SP) Register pair holds the 16-bit address of the current top of the Stack. This instruction first loads to the low-order portion of IX the byte at the memory location corresponding to the contents of SP; then SP is incremented and the contents of the corresponding adjacent memory location are loaded to the high-order portion of IX. The SP is incremented again.

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 14 (4, 4, 3, 3) | 3.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the Stack Pointer contains 1000h, memory location 1000h contains 55h, and location 1001h contains 33h, the instruction POP IX results in Index Register IX containing 3355h, and the Stack Pointer containing 1002h.

## POP IY

### Operation

IYH ← (SP – X1), IYL ← (SP)

### Op Code

POP

### Operand

*IY*

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | FD |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | E1 |

### Description

The top two bytes of the external memory last-in, first-out (LIFO) stack are popped to Index Register IY. The Stack Pointer (SP) Register pair holds the 16-bit address of the current top of the Stack. This instruction first loads to the low-order portion of IY the byte at the memory location corresponding to the contents of SP; then SP is incremented and the contents of the corresponding adjacent memory location are loaded to the high-order portion of IY. The SP is incremented again.

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 14 (4, 4, 3, 3) | 3.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the Stack Pointer Contains 1000h, memory location 1000h contains 55h, and location 1001h contains 33h, the instruction POP *IY* results in Index Register IY containing 3355h, and the Stack Pointer containing 1002h.



## Exchange, Block Transfer, and Search Group

The following exchange, block transfer, and search group instructions are each described in this section. Simply click to jump to an instruction's description to learn more.

[EX DE, HL](#) – see page 124

[EX AF, AF'](#) – see page 125

[EXX](#) – see page 126

[EX \(SP\), HL](#) – see page 127

[EX \(SP\), IX](#) – see page 128

[EX \(SP\), IY](#) – see page 129

[LDI](#) – see page 130

[LDIR](#) – see page 132

[LDD](#) – see page 134

[LDDR](#) – see page 136

[CPI](#) – see page 138

[CPIR](#) – see page 139

[CPD](#) – see page 141

[CPDR](#) – see page 142

## ***EX DE, HL***

### **Operation**

DE ↔ HL

### **Op Code**

EX

### **Operands**

*DE, HL*

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | EB |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

### **Description**

The 2-byte contents of register pairs DE and HL are exchanged.

| <b>M Cycles</b> | <b>T States</b> | <b>4 MHz E.T.</b> |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1               | 4               | 1.00              |

### **Condition Bits Affected**

None.

### **Example**

If register pair DE contains 2822h and register pair HL contains 499Ah, then upon the execution of an EX *DE, HL* instruction, register pair DE contains 499Ah and register pair HL contains 2822h.

## EX AF, AF'

### Operation

AF ↔ AF'

### Op Code

EX

### Operands

AF, AF'

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 08 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

### Description

The 2-byte contents of the register pairs AF and AF' are exchanged. Register pair AF consists of registers A' and F'.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1        | 4        | 1.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If register pair AF contains 9900h and register pair AF' contains 5944h, the contents of AF are 5944h and the contents of AF' are 9900h upon execution of the EX AF, AF' instruction.

## ***E*XX**

### **Operation**

$(BC) \leftrightarrow (BC'), (DE) \leftrightarrow (DE'), (HL) \leftrightarrow (HL')$

### **Op Code**

EXX

### **Operands**

None.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | D9 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

### **Description**

Each 2-byte value in register pairs BC, DE, and HL is exchanged with the 2-byte value in BC', DE', and HL', respectively.

| <b>M Cycles</b> | <b>T States</b> | <b>4 MHz E.T.</b> |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1               | 4               | 1.00              |

### **Condition Bits Affected**

None.

### **Example**

If register pairs BC, DE, and HL contain 445Ah, 3DA2h, and 8859h, respectively, and register pairs BC', DE', and HL' contain 0988h, 9300h, and 00E7h, respectively, then upon the execution of an EXX instruction, BC contains 0988h; DE contains 9300h; HL contains 00E7h; BC' contains 445Ah; DE' contains 3DA2h; and HL' contains 8859h.

## EX (SP), HL

### Operation

H ↔ (SP+1), L ↔ (SP)

### Op Code

EX

### Operands

(SP), HL

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | E3 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

### Description

The low-order byte contained in register pair HL is exchanged with the contents of the memory address specified by the contents of register pair SP (Stack Pointer), and the high-order byte of HL is exchanged with the next highest memory address (SP+1).

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 19 (4, 3, 4, 3, 5) | 4.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the HL register pair contains 7012h, the SP register pair contains 8856h, the memory location 8856h contains byte 11h, and memory location 8857h contains byte 22h, then the instruction EX (SP), HL results in the HL register pair containing number 2211h, memory location 8856h containing byte 12h, memory location 8857h containing byte 70h and Stack Pointer containing 8856h.

## EX (SP), IX

### Operation

IXH ↔ (SP+1), IXL ↔ (SP)

### Op Code

EX

### Operands

(SP), IX

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | DD |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | E3 |

### Description

The low-order byte in Index Register IX is exchanged with the contents of the memory address specified by the contents of register pair SP (Stack Pointer), and the high-order byte of IX is exchanged with the next highest memory address (SP+1).

| M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 4, 3, 5) | 5.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If Index Register IX contains 3988h, the SP register pair Contains 0100h, memory location 0100h contains byte 90h, and memory location 0101h contains byte 48h, then the instruction EX (SP), IX results in the IX register pair containing number 4890h, memory location 0100h containing 88h, memory location 0101h containing 39h, and the Stack Pointer containing 0100h.

## EX (SP), IY

### Operation

IYH ↔ (SP+1), IYL ↔ (SP)

### Op Code

EX

### Operands

(SP), IY

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | FD |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | E3 |

### Description

The low-order byte in Index Register IY is exchanged with the contents of the memory address specified by the contents of register pair SP (Stack Pointer), and the high-order byte of IY is exchanged with the next highest memory address (SP+1).

| M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 4, 3, 5) | 5.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If Index Register IY contains 3988h, the SP register pair contains 0100h, memory location 0100h contains byte 90h, and memory location 0101h contains byte 48h, then the instruction EX (SP), IY results in the IY register pair containing number 4890h, memory location 0100h containing 88h, memory location 0101h containing 39h, and the Stack Pointer containing 0100h.

## LDI

### Operation

$(DE) \leftarrow (HL), DE \leftarrow DE + 1, HL \leftarrow HL + 1, BC \leftarrow BC - 1$

### Op Code

LDI

### Operands

None

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | A0 |

### Description

A byte of data is transferred from the memory location addressed, by the contents of the HL register pair to the memory location addressed by the contents of the DE register pair. Then both these register pairs are incremented and the Byte Counter (BC) Register pair is decremented.

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 16 (4, 4, 3, 5) | 4.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is not affected.

Z is not affected.

H is reset.

P/V is set if  $BC - 1 \neq 0$ ; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is not affected.

### Example

If the HL register pair contains 1111h, memory location 1111h contains byte 88h, the DE register pair contains 2222h, the memory location 2222h contains byte 66h, and the BC



register pair contains 7h, then the instruction `LDI` results in the following contents in register pairs and memory addresses:

|         |          |       |
|---------|----------|-------|
| HL      | contains | 1112h |
| (1111h) | contains | 88h   |
| DE      | contains | 2223h |
| (2222h) | contains | 88h   |
| BC      | contains | 6H    |

## LDIR

### Operation

repeat  $\{(DE) \leftarrow (HL), DE \leftarrow DE + 1, HL \leftarrow HL + 1, BC \leftarrow BC - 1\}$  while  $(BC \neq 0)$

### Op Code

LDIR

### Operand

None

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | B0 |

### Description

This 2-byte instruction transfers a byte of data from the memory location addressed by the contents of the HL register pair to the memory location addressed by the DE register pair. Both these register pairs are incremented and the Byte Counter (BC) Register pair is decremented. If decrementing allows the BC to go to 0, the instruction is terminated. If BC is not 0, the program counter is decremented by two and the instruction is repeated. Interrupts are recognized and two refresh cycles are executed after each data transfer. When the BC is set to 0 prior to instruction execution, the instruction loops through 64KB.

For  $BC \neq 0$ :

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 21 (4, 4, 3, 5, 5) | 5.25       |

For  $BC = 0$ :

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 16 (4, 4, 3, 5) | 4.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is not affected.

Z is not affected.

H is reset.

P/V is set if  $BC - 1 \neq 0$ ; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is not affected.

### Example

The HL register pair contains 1111h, the DE register pair contains 2222h, the BC register pair contains 0003h, and memory locations contain the following data.

|         |          |     |         |          |     |
|---------|----------|-----|---------|----------|-----|
| (1111h) | contains | 88h | (2222h) | contains | 66h |
| (1112h) | contains | 36h | (2223h) | contains | 59h |
| (1113h) | contains | A5h | (2224h) | contains | C5h |

Upon the execution of an LDIR instruction, the contents of register pairs and memory locations now contain:

|         |          |       |         |          |     |
|---------|----------|-------|---------|----------|-----|
| HL      | contains | 1114h |         |          |     |
| DE      | contains | 2225h |         |          |     |
| BC      | contains | 0000h |         |          |     |
| (1111h) | contains | 88h   | (2222h) | contains | 88h |
| (1112h) | contains | 36h   | (2223h) | contains | 36h |
| (1113h) | contains | A5h   | (2224h) | contains | A5h |

## LDD

### Operation

$(DE) \leftarrow (HL), DE \leftarrow DE - 1, HL \leftarrow HL - 1, BC \leftarrow BC - 1$

### Op Code

LDD

### Operands

None.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | A8 |

### Description

This 2-byte instruction transfers a byte of data from the memory location addressed by the contents of the HL register pair to the memory location addressed by the contents of the DE register pair. Then both of these register pairs including the Byte Counter (BC) Register pair are decremented.

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 16 (4, 4, 3, 5) | 4.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is not affected.

Z is not affected.

H is reset.

P/V is set if  $BC - 1 \neq 0$ ; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is not affected.

### Example

If the HL register pair contains 1111h, memory location 1111h contains byte 88h, the DE register pair contains 2222h, memory location 2222h contains byte 66h, and the BC reg-

Register pair contains 7h, then instruction LDD results in the following contents in register pairs and memory addresses:

|         |          |       |
|---------|----------|-------|
| HL      | contains | 1110h |
| (1111h) | contains | 88h   |
| DE      | contains | 2221h |
| (2222h) | contains | 88h   |
| BC      | contains | 6h    |

## LDDR

### Operation

$(DE) \leftarrow (HL), DE \leftarrow DE - 1, HL \leftarrow HL - 1, BC \leftarrow BC - 1$

### Op Code

LDDR

### Operands

None.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | B8 |

### Description

This 2-byte instruction transfers a byte of data from the memory location addressed by the contents of the HL register pair to the memory location addressed by the contents of the DE register pair. Then both of these registers, and the BC (Byte Counter), are decremented. If decrementing causes BC to go to 0, the instruction is terminated. If BC is not 0, the program counter is decremented by two and the instruction is repeated. Interrupts are recognized and two refresh cycles execute after each data transfer.

When the BC is set to 0, prior to instruction execution, the instruction loops through 64KB.

For  $BC \neq 0$ :

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 21 (4, 4, 3, 5, 5) | 5.25       |

For  $BC = 0$ :

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 16 (4, 4, 3, 5) | 4.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is not affected.

Z is not affected.

H is reset.

P/V is reset.

N is reset.

### Example

The HL register pair contains 1114h, the DE register pair contains 2225h, the BC register pair contains 0003h, and memory locations contain the following data.

|         |          |     |         |          |     |
|---------|----------|-----|---------|----------|-----|
| (1114h) | contains | A5h | (2225h) | contains | C5h |
| (1113h) | contains | 36h | (2224h) | contains | 59h |
| (1112h) | contains | 88h | (2223h) | contains | 66h |

Upon the execution of an LDDR instruction, the contents of the register pairs and memory locations now contain:

|         |          |       |         |          |     |
|---------|----------|-------|---------|----------|-----|
| HL      | contains | 1111h |         |          |     |
| DE      | contains | 2222h |         |          |     |
| DC      | contains | 0000h |         |          |     |
| (1114h) | contains | A5h   | (2225h) | contains | A5h |
| (1113h) | contains | 36h   | (2224h) | contains | 36h |
| (1112h) | contains | 88h   | (2223h) | contains | 88h |

## CPI

### Operation

$A - (HL), HL \leftarrow HL + 1, BC \leftarrow BC - 1$

### Op Code

CPI

### Operands

None.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | A1 |

### Description

The contents of the memory location addressed by the HL register is compared with the contents of the Accumulator. With a true compare, a condition bit is set. Then HL is incremented and the Byte Counter (register pair BC) is decremented.

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 16 (4, 4, 3, 5) | 4.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if A is (HL); otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if borrow from bit 4; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if  $BC - 1$  is not 0; otherwise, it is reset.

N is set.

C is not affected.

### Example

If the HL register pair contains 1111h, memory location 1111h contains 3Bh, the Accumulator contains 3Bh, and the Byte Counter contains 0001h. Upon the execution of a CPI instruction, the Byte Counter contains 0000h, the HL register pair contains 1112h, the Z flag in the F register is set, and the P/V flag in the F Register is reset. There is no effect on the contents of the Accumulator or to address 1111h.



# CPIR

## Operation

$A \leftarrow (HL), HL \leftarrow HL+1, BC \leftarrow BC - 1$

## Op Code

CPIR

## Operands

None.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | B1 |

## Description

The contents of the memory location addressed by the HL register pair is compared with the contents of the Accumulator. During a compare operation, a condition bit is set. HL is incremented and the Byte Counter (register pair BC) is decremented. If decrementing causes BC to go to 0 or if  $A = (HL)$ , the instruction is terminated. If BC is not 0 and  $A \neq (HL)$ , the program counter is decremented by two and the instruction is repeated. Interrupts are recognized and two refresh cycles are executed after each data transfer.

If BC is set to 0 before instruction execution, the instruction loops through 64KB if no match is found.

For  $BC \neq 0$  and  $A \neq (HL)$ :

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 21 (4, 4, 3, 5, 5) | 5.25       |

For  $BC = 0$  and  $A = (HL)$ :

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 16 (4, 4, 3, 5) | 4.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if A equals (HL); otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if borrow from bit 4; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if  $BC - 1$  does not equal 0; otherwise, it is reset.

N is set.

C is not affected.

### Example

If the HL register pair contains 1111h, the Accumulator contains F3h, the Byte Counter contains 0007h, and memory locations contain the following data.

|         |          |     |
|---------|----------|-----|
| (1111h) | contains | 52h |
| (1112h) | contains | 00h |
| (1113h) | contains | F3h |

Upon the execution of a CPIR instruction, register pair HL contains 1114h, the Byte Counter contains 0004h, the P/V flag in the F Register is set, and the Z flag in the F Register is set.

## CPD

### Operation

$A \leftarrow (HL), HL \leftarrow HL - 1, BC \leftarrow BC - 1$

### Op Code

CPD

### Operands

None.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | A9 |

### Description

The contents of the memory location addressed by the HL register pair is compared with the contents of the Accumulator. During a compare operation, a condition bit is set. The HL and Byte Counter (register pair BC) are decremented.

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 16 (4, 4, 3, 5) | 4.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if A equals (HL); otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if borrow from bit 4; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if  $BC - 1 \neq 0$ ; otherwise, it is reset.

N is set.

C is not affected.

### Example

If the HL register pair contains 1111h, memory location 1111h contains 3Bh, the Accumulator contains 3Bh, and the Byte Counter contains 0001h. Upon the execution of a CPD instruction, the Byte Counter contains 0000h, the HL register pair contains 1110h, the flag in the F Register is set, and the P/V flag in the F Register is reset. There is no effect on the contents of the Accumulator or address 1111h.

## CPDR

### Operation

$A - (HL), HL \leftarrow HL - 1, BC \leftarrow BC - 1$

### Op Code

CPDR

### Operands

None.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | B9 |

### Description

The contents of the memory location addressed by the HL register pair is compared with the contents of the Accumulator. During a compare operation, a condition bit is set. The HL and Byte Counter (BC) Register pairs are decremented. If decrementing allows the BC to go to 0 or if  $A = (HL)$ , the instruction is terminated. If BC is not 0 and  $A = (HL)$ , the program counter is decremented by two and the instruction is repeated. Interrupts are recognized and two refresh cycles execute after each data transfer. When the BC is set to 0, prior to instruction execution, the instruction loops through 64KB if no match is found.

For  $BC \neq 0$  and  $A \neq (HL)$ :

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 21 (4, 4, 3, 5, 5) | 5.25       |

For  $BC = 0$  and  $A = (HL)$ :

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 16 (4, 4, 3, 5) | 4.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if  $A = (HL)$ ; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if borrow from bit 4; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if  $BC - 1 \neq 0$ ; otherwise, it is reset.

N is set.

C is not affected.

### Example

The HL register pair contains 1118h, the Accumulator contains F3h, the Byte Counter contains 0007h, and memory locations contain the following data.

|         |          |     |
|---------|----------|-----|
| (1118h) | contains | 52h |
| (1117h) | contains | 00h |
| (1116h) | contains | F3h |

Upon the execution of a CPDR instruction, register pair HL contains 1115h, the Byte Counter contains 0004h, the P/V flag in the F Register is set, and the Z flag in the F Register is set.

## 8-Bit Arithmetic Group

The following 8-bit arithmetic group instructions are each described in this section. Simply click to jump to an instruction's description to learn more.

[ADD A, r](#) – see page 145

[ADD A, n](#) – see page 147

[ADD A, \(HL\)](#) – see page 148

[ADD A, \(IX + d\)](#) – see page 149

[ADD A, \(IY + d\)](#) – see page 150

[ADC A, s](#) – see page 151

[SUB s](#) – see page 153

[SBC A, s](#) – see page 155

[AND s](#) – see page 157

[OR s](#) – see page 159

[XOR s](#) – see page 161

[CP s](#) – see page 163

[INC r](#) – see page 165

[INC \(HL\)](#) – see page 167

[INC \(IX+d\)](#) – see page 168

[INC \(IY+d\)](#) – see page 169

[DEC m](#) – see page 170

## ADD A, r

### Operation

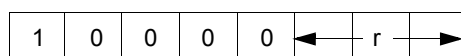
$A \leftarrow A + r$

### Op Code

ADD

### Operands

A, r



### Description

The contents of register *r* are added to the contents of the Accumulator, and the result is stored in the Accumulator. The *r* symbol identifies the registers A, B, C, D, E, H, or L, assembled as follows in the object code:

| Register | r   |
|----------|-----|
| A        | 111 |
| B        | 000 |
| C        | 001 |
| D        | 010 |
| E        | 011 |
| H        | 100 |
| L        | 101 |

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1        | 4        | 1.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if carry from bit 3; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if overflow; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is set if carry from bit 7; otherwise, it is reset.

### **Example**

If the Accumulator contains 44h and Register C contains 11h, then upon the execution of an ADD A, C instruction, the Accumulator contains 55h.



## ADD A, n

### Operation

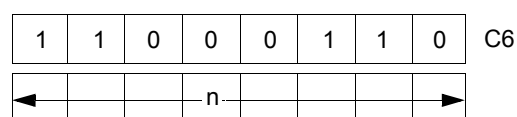
$A \leftarrow A + n$

### Op Code

ADD

### Operands

A, n



### Description

The *n* integer is added to the contents of the Accumulator, and the results are stored in the Accumulator.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 7 (4, 3) | 1.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if carry from bit 3; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if overflow; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is set if carry from bit 7; otherwise, it is reset.

### Example

If the Accumulator contains 23h, then upon the execution of an ADD A, 33h instruction, the Accumulator contains 56h.

## ADD A, (HL)

### Operation

$A \leftarrow A + (HL)$

### Op Code

ADD

### Operands

A, (HL)

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 86 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

### Description

The byte at the memory address specified by the contents of the HL register pair is added to the contents of the Accumulator, and the result is stored in the Accumulator.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 7 (4, 3) | 1.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if carry from bit 3; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if overflow; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is set if carry from bit 7; otherwise, it is reset.

### Example

If the Accumulator contains A0h, register pair HL contains 2323h, and memory location 2323h contains byte 08h, then upon the execution of an ADD A, (HL) instruction, the Accumulator contains A8h.

## ADD A, (IX + d)

### Operation

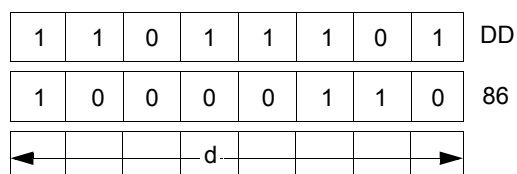
$A \leftarrow A + (IX+d)$

### Op Code

ADD

### Operands

A, (IX + d)



### Description

The contents of the Index (register pair IX) Register is added to a two's complement displacement d to point to an address in memory. The contents of this address is then added to the contents of the Accumulator and the result is stored in the Accumulator.

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if carry from bit 3; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if overflow; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is set if carry from bit 7; otherwise, it is reset.

### Example

If the Accumulator contains 11h, Index Register IX contains 1000h, and memory location 1005h contains 22h, then upon the execution of an ADD A, (IX + 5h) instruction, the Accumulator contains 33h.

## ADD A, (IY + d)

### Operation

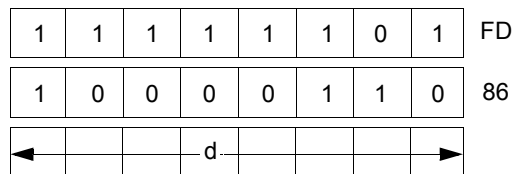
$A \leftarrow A + (IY+d)$

### Op Code

ADD

### Operands

A, (IY + d)



### Description

The contents of the Index (register pair IY) Register is added to a two's complement displacement d to point to an address in memory. The contents of this address is then added to the contents of the Accumulator, and the result is stored in the Accumulator.

| M Cycles | T States          | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-------------------|------------|
| 5        | 19(4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if carry from bit 3; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if overflow; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is set if carry from bit 7; otherwise, it is reset.

### Example

If the Accumulator contains 11h, Index Register IY contains 1000h, and memory location 1005h contains 22h, then upon the execution of an ADD A, (IY + 5h) instruction, the Accumulator contains 33h.

## ADC A, s

### Operation

$A \leftarrow A + s + CY$

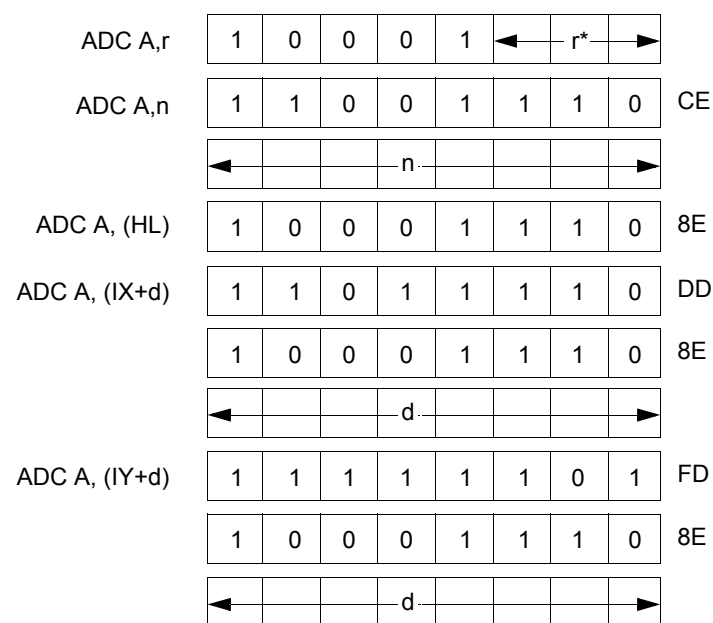
### Op Code

ADC

### Operands

A, s

This *s* operand is any of *r*, *n*, (*HL*), (*IX+d*), or (*IY+d*) as defined for the analogous ADD instruction. These possible op code/operand combinations are assembled as follows in the object code:



*r* identifies registers B, C, D, E, H, L, or A, assembled as follows in the object code field:

| Register | r   |
|----------|-----|
| B        | 000 |
| C        | 001 |
| D        | 010 |
| E        | 011 |
| H        | 100 |
| L        | 101 |
| A        | 111 |

### Description

The *s* operand, along with the Carry Flag (C in the F Register) is added to the contents of the Accumulator, and the result is stored in the Accumulator.

| Instruction   | M Cycle | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|---------------|---------|--------------------|------------|
| ADC A, r      | 1       | 4                  | 1.00       |
| ADC A, n      | 2       | 7 (4, 3)           | 1.75       |
| ADC A, (HL)   | 2       | 7 (4, 3)           | 1.75       |
| ADC A, (IX+d) | 5       | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |
| ADC A, (IY+d) | 5       | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if carry from bit 3; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if overflow; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is set if carry from bit 7; otherwise, it is reset.

### Example

If the Accumulator contents are 16h, the Carry Flag is set, the HL register pair contains 6666h, and address 6666h contains 10h, then upon the execution of an ADC A, (HL) instruction, the Accumulator contains 27h.

## SUB s

### Operation

$A \leftarrow A - s$

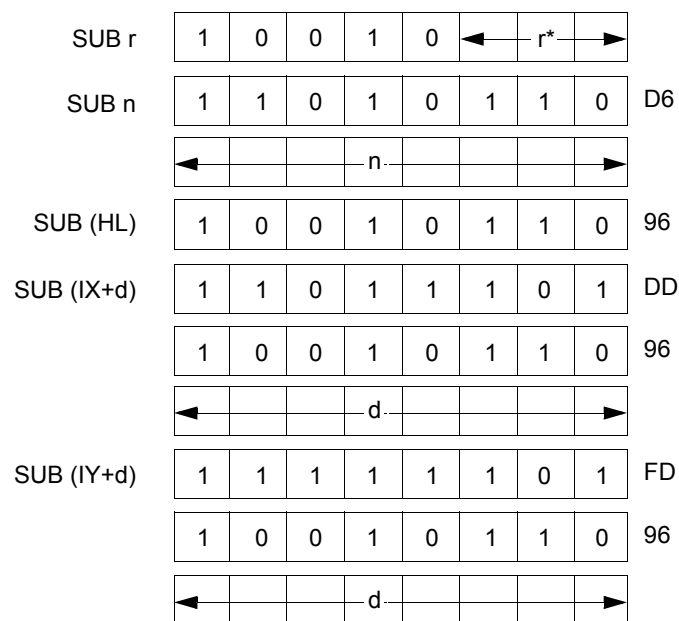
### Op Code

SUB

### Operand

*s*

This *s* operand is any of *r*, *n*, (*HL*), (*IX+d*), or (*IY+d*) as defined for the analogous ADD instruction. These possible op code/operand combinations are assembled as follows in the object code:



*r* identifies registers B, C, D, E, H, L, or A assembled as follows in the object code field:

| Register | <i>r</i> |
|----------|----------|
| B        | 000      |
| C        | 001      |
| D        | 010      |
| E        | 011      |
| H        | 100      |
| L        | 101      |
| A        | 111      |

### Description

The *s* operand is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator, and the result is stored in the Accumulator.

| Instruction  | M Cycle | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|--------------|---------|--------------------|------------|
| SUB <i>r</i> | 1       | 4                  | 1.00       |
| SUB <i>n</i> | 2       | 7 (4, 3)           | 1.75       |
| SUB (HL)     | 2       | 7 (4, 3)           | 1.75       |
| SUB (IX+d)   | 5       | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |
| SUB (IY+d)   | 5       | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if borrow from bit 4; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if overflow; otherwise, it is reset.

N is set.

C is set if borrow; otherwise, it is reset.

### Example

If the Accumulator contents are 29h, and the D Register contains 11h, then upon the execution of a SUB *D* instruction, the Accumulator contains 18h.



## SBC A, s

### Operation

$A \leftarrow A - s - CY$

### Op Code

SBC

### Operands

A, s

The *s* operand is any of *r*, *n*, (*HL*), (*IX+d*), or (*IY+d*) as defined for the analogous ADD instructions. These possible op code/operand combinations are assembled as follows in the object code.

|               |   |   |   |   |   |        |   |   |    |
|---------------|---|---|---|---|---|--------|---|---|----|
| SBC A, r      | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | ← r* → |   |   |    |
| SBC A, n      | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1      | 1 | 0 | DE |
|               | ← |   |   | n |   |        |   | → |    |
| SBC A, (HL)   | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1      | 1 | 0 | 9E |
| SBC A, (IX+d) | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1      | 0 | 1 | DD |
|               | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1      | 1 | 0 | 9E |
|               | ← |   |   | d |   |        |   | → |    |
| SBC A, (IY+d) | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1      | 0 | 1 | FD |
|               | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1      | 1 | 0 | 9E |
|               | ← |   |   | d |   |        |   | → |    |

*r* identifies registers B, C, D, E, H, L, or A assembled as follows in the object code field:

| Register | r   |
|----------|-----|
| B        | 000 |
| C        | 001 |
| D        | 010 |
| E        | 011 |
| H        | 100 |
| L        | 101 |
| A        | 111 |

### Description

The *s* operand, along with the Carry flag (C in the F Register) is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator, and the result is stored in the Accumulator.

| Instruction   | M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|---------------|----------|--------------------|------------|
| SBC A, r      | 1        | 4                  | 1.00       |
| SBC A, n      | 2        | 7(4, 3)            | 1.75       |
| SBC A, (HL)   | 2        | 7 (4, 3)           | 1.75       |
| SBC A, (IX+d) | 5        | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |
| SBC A, (IY+d) | 5        | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if borrow from bit 4; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is reset if overflow; otherwise, it is reset.

N is set.

C is set if borrow; otherwise, it is reset.

### Example

If the Accumulator contains 16h, the carry flag is set, the HL register pair contains 3433h, and address 3433h contains 05h, then upon the execution of an SBC A, (HL) instruction, the Accumulator contains 10h.

## AND s

### Operation

$A \leftarrow A \wedge s$

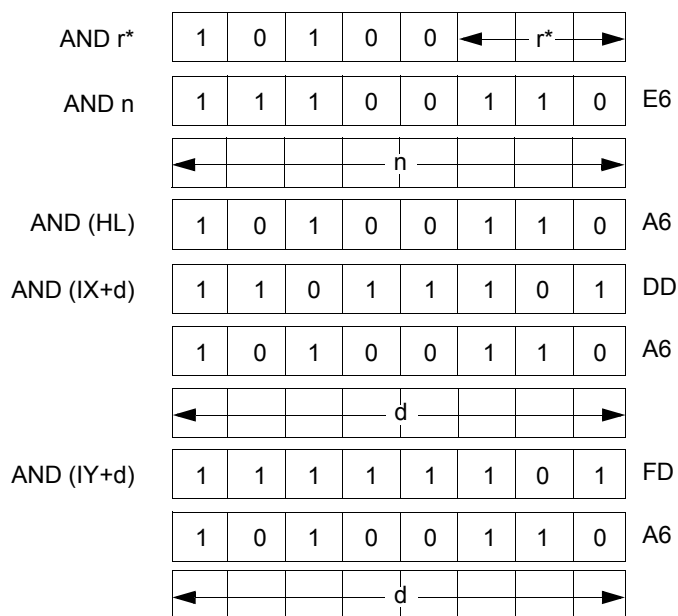
### Op Code

AND

### Operand

*s*

The *s* operand is any of *r*, *n*, (*HL*), (*IX+d*), or (*IY+d*), as defined for the analogous ADD instructions. These possible op code/operand combinations are assembled as follows in the object code:



*r* identifies registers B, C, D, E, H, L, or A specified in the assembled object code field, as follows:

| Register | r   |
|----------|-----|
| B        | 000 |
| C        | 001 |
| D        | 010 |
| E        | 011 |
| H        | 100 |
| L        | 101 |
| A        | 111 |

### Description

A logical AND operation is performed between the byte specified by the *s* operand and the byte contained in the Accumulator; the result is stored in the Accumulator.

| Instruction  | M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|--------------|----------|--------------------|------------|
| AND <i>r</i> | 1        | 4                  | 1.00       |
| AND <i>n</i> | 2        | 7 (4, 3)           | 1.75       |
| AND (HL)     | 2        | 7 (4, 3)           | 1.75       |
| AND (IX+d)   | 5        | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |
| AND (IX+d)   | 5        | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set.

P/V is reset if overflow; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is reset.

### Example

If Register B contains 7Bh (0111 1011) and the Accumulator contains C3h (1100 0011), then upon the execution of an AND B instruction, the Accumulator contains 43h (0100 0011).

## OR s

### Operation

$A \leftarrow A \vee s$

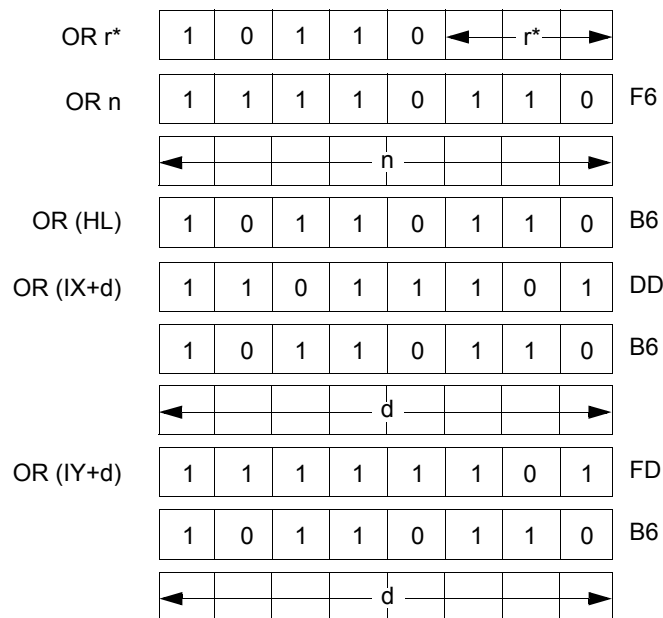
### Op Code

OR

### Operand

*s*

The *s* operand is any of *r*, *n*, (*HL*), (*IX+d*), or (*IY+d*), as defined for the analogous ADD instructions. These possible op code/operand combinations are assembled as follows in the object code:



*r* identifies registers B, C-, D, E, H, L, or A specified in the assembled object code field, as follows:

| Register | r   |
|----------|-----|
| B        | 000 |
| C        | 001 |
| D        | 010 |
| E        | 011 |
| H        | 100 |
| L        | 101 |
| A        | 111 |

### Description

A logical OR operation is performed between the byte specified by the *s* operand and the byte contained in the Accumulator; the result is stored in the Accumulator.

| Instruction | M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|-------------|----------|--------------------|------------|
| OR <i>r</i> | 1        | 4                  | 1.00       |
| OR <i>n</i> | 2        | 7 (4, 3)           | 1.75       |
| OR (HL)     | 2        | 7 (4, 3)           | 1.75       |
| OR (IX+d)   | 5        | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |
| OR (IY+d)   | 5        | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is reset.

P/V is set if overflow; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is reset.

### Example

If the H Register contains 48h (0100 0100), and the Accumulator contains 12h (0001 0010), then upon the execution of an OR *H* instruction, the Accumulator contains 5Ah (0101 1010).

## XOR s

### Operation

$$A \leftarrow A \oplus s$$

### Op Code

XOR

### Operand

*s*

The *s* operand is any of *r*, *n*, (*HL*), (*IX+d*), or (*IY+d*), as defined for the analogous ADD instructions. These possible Op Code/operand combinations are assembled as follows in the object code:

|            |       |   |   |   |   |        |   |   |    |
|------------|-------|---|---|---|---|--------|---|---|----|
| XOR r*     | 1     | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ← r* → |   |   |    |
| XOR n      | 1     | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1      | 1 | 0 | EE |
|            | ← n → |   |   |   |   |        |   |   |    |
| XOR (HL)   | 1     | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1      | 1 | 0 | AE |
| XOR (IX+d) | 1     | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1      | 0 | 1 | DD |
|            | 1     | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1      | 1 | 0 | AE |
|            | ← d → |   |   |   |   |        |   |   |    |
| XOR (IY+d) | 1     | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1      | 0 | 1 | FD |
|            | 1     | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1      | 1 | 0 | AE |
|            | ← d → |   |   |   |   |        |   |   |    |

*r* identifies registers B, C, D, E, H, L, or A specified in the assembled object code field, as follows:

| Register | r   |
|----------|-----|
| B        | 000 |
| C        | 001 |
| D        | 010 |
| E        | 011 |
| H        | 100 |
| L        | 101 |
| A        | 111 |

### Description

The logical exclusive-OR operation is performed between the byte specified by the *s* operand and the byte contained in the Accumulator; the result is stored in the Accumulator.

| Instruction | M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|-------------|----------|--------------------|------------|
| XOR r       | 1        | 4                  | 1.00       |
| XOR n       | 2        | 7 (4, 3)           | 1.75       |
| XOR (HL)    | 2        | 7 (4, 3)           | 1.75       |
| XOR (IX+d)  | 5        | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |
| XOR (IY+d)  | 5        | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is reset.

P/V is set if parity even; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is reset.

### Example

If the Accumulator contains 96h (1001 0110), then upon the execution of an XOR 5Dh (5Dh = 0101 1101) instruction, the Accumulator contains CBh (1100 1011).



## CP s

### Operation

$A - s$

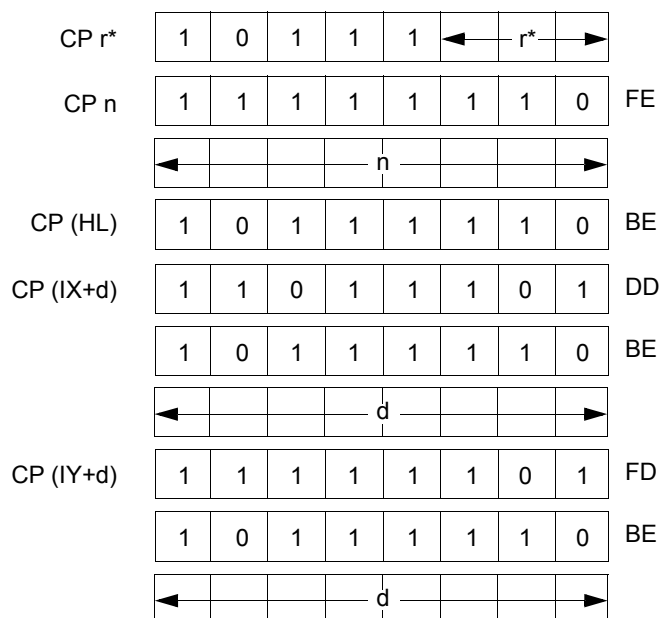
### Op Code

CP

### Operand

*s*

The *s* operand is any of *r*, *n*, (*HL*), (*IX+d*), or (*IY+d*), as defined for the analogous ADD instructions. These possible op code/operand combinations are assembled as follows in the object code:



*r* identifies registers B, C, D, E, H, L, or A specified in the assembled object code field, as follows:

| Register | r   |
|----------|-----|
| B        | 000 |
| C        | 001 |
| D        | 010 |
| E        | 011 |
| H        | 100 |
| L        | 101 |
| A        | 111 |

### Description

The contents of the *s* operand are compared with the contents of the Accumulator. If there is a true compare, the *Z* flag is set. The execution of this instruction does not affect the contents of the Accumulator.

| Instruction | M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|-------------|----------|--------------------|------------|
| CP <i>r</i> | 1        | 4                  | 1.00       |
| CP <i>n</i> | 2        | 7(4, 3)            | 1.75       |
| CP (HL)     | 2        | 7 (4, 3)           | 1.75       |
| CP (IX+d)   | 5        | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |
| CP (IY+d)   | 5        | 19 (4, 4, 3, 5, 3) | 4.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

*S* is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

*Z* is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

*H* is set if borrow from bit 4; otherwise, it is reset.

*P/V* is set if overflow; otherwise, it is reset.

*N* is set.

*C* is set if borrow; otherwise, it is reset.

### Example

If the Accumulator contains 63h, the HL register pair contains 6000h, and memory location 6000h contains 60h, the instruction CP (*HL*) results in the PN flag in the F Register resetting.

## INC *r*

### Operation

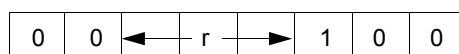
$r \leftarrow r + 1$

### Op Code

INC

### Operand

*r*



### Description

Register *r* is incremented and register *r* identifies any of the registers A, B, C, D, E, H, or L, assembled as follows in the object code.

| Register | r   |
|----------|-----|
| A        | 111 |
| B        | 000 |
| C        | 001 |
| D        | 010 |
| E        | 011 |
| H        | 100 |
| L        | 101 |

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1        | 4        | 1.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if carry from bit 3; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if *r* was 7Fh before operation; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is not affected.

### **Example**

If the D Register contains 28h, then upon the execution of an INC *D* instruction, the D Register contains 29h.

## INC (HL)

### Operation

$(HL) \leftarrow (HL) + 1$

### Op Code

INC

### Operand

(HL)

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 34 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

### Description

The byte contained in the address specified by the contents of the HL register pair is incremented.

| M Cycles | T States     | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------|------------|
| 3        | 11 (4, 4, 3) | 2.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if carry from bit 3; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if (HL) was 7Fh before operation; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is not affected.

### Example

If the HL register pair contains 3434h and address 3434h contains 82h, then upon the execution of an INC (HL) instruction, memory location 3434h contains 83h.

## INC (*IX+d*)

### Operation

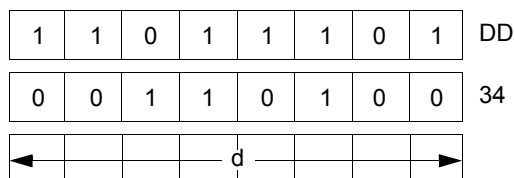
$(IX+d) \leftarrow (IX+d) + 1$

### Op Code

INC

### Operands

$(IX+d)$



### Description

The contents of Index Register IX (register pair IX) are added to the two's-complement displacement integer, *d*, to point to an address in memory. The contents of this address are then incremented.

| M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if carry from bit 3; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if  $(IX+d)$  was 7Fh before operation; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is not affected.

### Example

If Index Register pair IX contains 2020h and memory location 2030h contains byte 34h, then upon the execution of an INC ( $IX+10h$ ) instruction, memory location 2030h contains 35h.

## INC (IY+d)

### Operation

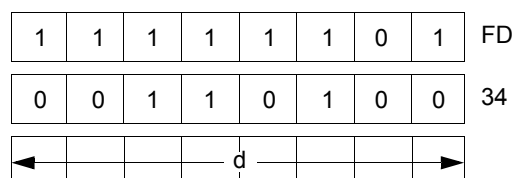
$(IY+d) \leftarrow (IY+d) + 1$

### Op Code

INC

### Operands

(IY+d)



### Description

The contents of Index Register IY (register pair IY) are added to the two's-complement displacement integer,  $d$ , to point to an address in memory. The contents of this address are then incremented.

| M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if carry from bit 3; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if (IY+d) was 7Fh before operation; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is not affected.

### Example

If Index Register IY are 2020h and memory location 2030h contains byte 34h, then upon the execution of an INC (IY+10h) instruction, memory location 2030h contains 35h.

## DEC *m*

### Operation

$m \leftarrow m - 1$

### Op Code

DEC

### Operand

*m*

The *m* operand is any of *r*, (*HL*), (*IX+d*), or (*IY+d*), as defined for the analogous INC instructions. These possible op code/operand combinations are assembled as follows in the object code:

|                |                              |   |   |          |   |   |   |   |    |
|----------------|------------------------------|---|---|----------|---|---|---|---|----|
| DEC <i>r</i> * | 0                            | 0 | ← | <i>r</i> | → | 1 | 0 | 1 |    |
| DEC (HL)       | 0                            | 0 | 1 | 1        | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 35 |
| DEC (IX+d)     | 1                            | 1 | 0 | 1        | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | DD |
|                | 0                            | 0 | 1 | 1        | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 35 |
|                | ←         <i>d</i>         → |   |   |          |   |   |   |   |    |
| DEC (IY+d)     | 1                            | 1 | 1 | 1        | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | FD |
|                | 0                            | 0 | 1 | 1        | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 35 |
|                | ←         <i>d</i>         → |   |   |          |   |   |   |   |    |

*r* identifies registers B, C, D, E, H, L, or A assembled as follows in the object code field:

| Register | <i>r</i> |
|----------|----------|
| B        | 000      |
| C        | 001      |
| D        | 010      |
| E        | 011      |
| H        | 100      |
| L        | 101      |
| A        | 111      |



## Description

The byte specified by the *m* operand is decremented.

| Instruction | M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|-------------|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| DEC r       | 1        | 4                     | 1.00       |
| DEC (HL)    | 3        | 11 (4, 4, 3)          | 2.75       |
| DEC (IX+d)  | 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |
| DEC (IY+d)  | 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |

## Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if borrow from bit 4, otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if *m* was 80h before operation; otherwise, it is reset.

N is set.

C is not affected.

## Example

If the D Register contains byte 2Ah, then upon the execution of a DEC *D* instruction, the D Register contains 29h.

## General-Purpose Arithmetic and CPU Control Groups

The following general-purpose arithmetic and CPU control group instructions are each described in this section. Simply click to jump to an instruction's description to learn more.

[DAA](#) – see page 173

[CPL](#) – see page 175

[NEG](#) – see page 176

[CCF](#) – see page 178

[SCF](#) – see page 179

[NOP](#) – see page 180

[HALT](#) – see page 181

[DI](#) – see page 182

[EI](#) – see page 183

[IM 0](#) – see page 184

[IM 1](#) – see page 185

[IM 2](#) – see page 186

# DAA

## Operation

@

## Op Code

DAA

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 27 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

## Operands

None.

## Description

This instruction conditionally adjusts the Accumulator for BCD addition and subtraction operations. For addition (ADD, ADC, INC) or subtraction (SUB, SBC, DEC, NEG), the following table indicates the operation being performed:

| Operation | C Before<br>DAA | Hex Value<br>In Upper<br>Digit<br>(Bits 7–4) | H Before<br>DAA | Hex Value<br>In Lower<br>Digit<br>(Bits 3–0) | Number<br>Added To<br>Byte | C After<br>DAA |
|-----------|-----------------|--|-----------------|--|----------------------------|----------------|
|           | 0               | 9–0  | 0               | 0–9  | 00                         | 0              |
|           | 0               | 0–8  | 0               | A–F  | 06                         | 0              |
|           | 0               | 0–9  | 1               | 0–3  | 06                         | 0              |
| ADD       | 0               | A–F  | 0               | 0–9  | 60                         | 1              |
| ADC       | 0               | 9–F  | 0               | A–F  | 66                         | 1              |
| INC       | 0               | A–F  | 1               | 0–3  | 66                         | 1              |
|           | 1               | 0–2  | 0               | 0–9  | 60                         | 1              |
|           | 1               | 0–2  | 0               | A–F  | 66                         | 1              |
|           | 1               | 0–3  | 1               | 0–3  | 66                         | 1              |
| SUB       | 0               | 0–9  | 0               | 0–9  | 00                         | 0              |
| SBC       | 0               | 0–8  | 1               | 6–F  | FA                         | 0              |
| DEC       | 1               | 7–F  | 0               | 0–9  | A0                         | 1              |
| NEG       | 1               | 6–7  | 1               | 6–F  | 9A                         | 1              |

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1        | 4        | 1.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if most-significant bit of the Accumulator is 1 after an operation; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if the Accumulator is 0 after an operation; otherwise, it is reset.

H: see the DAA instruction table on the previous page.

P/V is set if the Accumulator is at even parity after an operation; otherwise, it is reset.

N is not affected.

C: see the DAA instruction table on the previous page.

### Example

An addition operation is performed between 15 (BCD) and 27 (BCD); simple decimal arithmetic provides the following result:

$$\begin{array}{r} 15 \\ + 27 \\ \hline 42 \end{array}$$

The binary representations are added in the Accumulator according to standard binary arithmetic, as follows:

$$\begin{array}{r} 0001 \quad 0101 \\ + 0010 \quad 0111 \\ \hline 0011 \quad 1100 \end{array} = 3C$$

The sum is ambiguous. The DAA instruction adjusts this result so that the correct BCD representation is obtained, as follows:

$$\begin{array}{r} 0011 \quad 1100 \\ + 0000 \quad 0110 \\ \hline 0100 \quad 0010 \end{array} = 42$$

# CPL

## Operation

$A \leftarrow \bar{A}$

## Op Code

CPL

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

## Operands

None.

## Description

The contents of the Accumulator (Register A) are inverted (one's complement).

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1        | 4        | 1.00       |

## Condition Bits Affected

S is not affected.

Z is not affected.

H is set.

P/V is not affected.

N is set.

C is not affected.

## Example

If the Accumulator contains 1011 0100, then upon the execution of a CPL instruction, the Accumulator contains 0100 1011.

## NEG

### Operation

$A \leftarrow 0 - A$

### Op Code

NEG

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 44 |

### Operands

None.

### Description

The contents of the Accumulator are negated (two's complement). This method is the same as subtracting the contents of the Accumulator from zero.

---

► **Note:** The 80h address remains unchanged.

---

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 8 (4, 4) | 2.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if borrow from bit 4; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if Accumulator was 80h before operation; otherwise, it is reset.

N is set.

C is set if Accumulator was not 00h before operation; otherwise, it is reset.

### Example

The Accumulator contains the following data:

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

Upon the execution of a NEG instruction, the Accumulator contains:

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

## CCF

### Operation

$CY \leftarrow \overline{CY}$

### Op Code

CCF

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

### Operands

None.

### Description

The Carry flag in the F Register is inverted.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1        | 4        | 1.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is not affected.

Z is not affected.

H, previous carry is copied.

P/V is not affected.

N is reset.

C is set if CY was 0 before operation; otherwise, it is reset.



# SCF

## Operation

$CY \leftarrow 1$

## Op Code

SCF

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 37 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

## Operands

None.

## Description

The Carry flag in the F Register is set.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1        | 4        | 1.00       |

## Condition Bits Affected

S is not affected.

Z is not affected.

H is reset.

P/V is not affected.

N is reset.

C is set.

# NOP

## Operation

—

## Op Code

NOP

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 00 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

## Operands

None.

## Description

The CPU performs no operation during this machine cycle.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1        | 4        | 1.00       |

## Condition Bits Affected

None.

# HALT

## Operation

—

## Op Code

HALT

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 76 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

## Operands

None.

## Description

The HALT instruction suspends CPU operation until a subsequent interrupt or reset is received. While in the HALT state, the processor executes NOPs to maintain memory refresh logic.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1        | 4        | 1.00       |

## Condition Bits Affected

None.

## DI

### Operation

IFF ← 0

### Op Code

DI

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | F3 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

### Operands

None.

### Description

DI disables the maskable interrupt by resetting the interrupt enable flip-flops (IFF1 and IFF2).

---

► **Note:** This instruction disables the maskable interrupt during its execution.

---

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1        | 4        | 1.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

When the CPU executes the instruction DI the maskable interrupt is disabled until it is subsequently re-enabled by an EI instruction. The CPU does not respond to an Interrupt Request (INT) signal.

# EI

## Operation

IFF ← 1

## Op Code

EI

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | FB |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

## Operands

None.

## Description

The enable interrupt instruction sets both interrupt enable flip flops (IFF1 and IFF2) to a logic 1, allowing recognition of any maskable interrupt.

---

► **Note:** During the execution of this instruction and the following instruction, maskable interrupts are disabled.

---

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1        | 4        | 1.00       |

## Condition Bits Affected

None.

## Example

When the CPU executes an EI RETI instruction, the maskable interrupt is enabled then upon the execution of an the RETI instruction.

## IM 0

### Operation

Set Interrupt Mode 0

### Op Code

IM

### Operand

0

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 46 |

### Description

The IM 0 instruction sets Interrupt Mode 0. In this mode, the interrupting device can insert any instruction on the data bus for execution by the CPU. The first byte of a multi-byte instruction is read during the interrupt acknowledge cycle. Subsequent bytes are read in by a normal memory read sequence.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 8 (4, 4) | 2.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

# IM 1

## Operation

Set Interrupt Mode 1

## Op Code

IM

## Operand

*I*

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 56 |

## Description

The IM 1 instruction sets Interrupt Mode 1. In this mode, the processor responds to an interrupt by executing a restart at address 0038h.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 8 (4, 4) | 2.00       |

## Condition Bits Affected

None.

## IM 2

### Operation

Set Interrupt Mode 2

### Op Code

IM

### Operand

2

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 5E |

### Description

The IM 2 instruction sets the vectored Interrupt Mode 2. This mode allows an indirect call to any memory location by an 8-bit vector supplied from the peripheral device. This vector then becomes the least-significant eight bits of the indirect pointer, while the I Register in the CPU provides the most-significant eight bits. This address points to an address in a vector table that is the starting address for the interrupt service routine.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 8 (4, 4) | 2.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.



## 16-Bit Arithmetic Group

The following 16-bit arithmetic group instructions are each described in this section. Simply click to jump to an instruction's description to learn more.

[ADD HL, ss](#) – see page 188

[ADC HL, ss](#) – see page 190

[SBC HL, ss](#) – see page 192

[ADD IX, pp](#) – see page 194

[ADD IY, rr](#) – see page 196

[INC ss](#) – see page 198

[INC IX](#) – see page 199

[INC IY](#) – see page 200

[DEC ss](#) – see page 201

[DEC IX](#) – see page 202

[DEC IY](#) – see page 203

## ADD HL, ss

### Operation

HL ← HL + ss

### Op Code

ADD

### Operands

HL, ss

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | s | s | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

### Description

The contents of register pair ss (any of register pairs BC, DE, HL, or SP) are added to the contents of register pair HL and the result is stored in HL. In the assembled object code, operand *ss* is specified as follows:

| Register<br>Pair | ss |
|------------------|----|
| BC               | 00 |
| DE               | 01 |
| HL               | 10 |
| SP               | 11 |

| M Cycles | T States     | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------|------------|
| 3        | 11 (4, 4, 3) | 2.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is not affected.

Z is not affected.

H is set if carry from bit 11; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is not affected.

N is reset.

C is set if carry from bit 15; otherwise, it is reset.

### Example

If register pair HL contains the integer 4242h and register pair DE contains 1111h, then upon the execution of an `ADD HL, DE` instruction, the HL register pair contains 5353h.

## ADC HL, ss

### Operation

HL ← HL + ss + CY

### Op Code

ADC

### Operands

HL, ss

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 0 | 1 | s | s | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |    |

### Description

The contents of register pair ss (any of register pairs BC, DE, HL, or SP) are added with the Carry flag (C flag in the F Register) to the contents of register pair HL, and the result is stored in HL. In the assembled object code, operand ss is specified as follows:

| Register<br>Pair | ss |
|------------------|----|
| BC               | 00 |
| DE               | 01 |
| HL               | 10 |
| SP               | 11 |

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 15 (4, 4, 4, 3) | 3.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if carry from bit 11; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if overflow; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is set if carry from bit 15; otherwise, it is reset.

### **Example**

If register pair BC contains 2222h, register pair HL contains 5437h, and the Carry Flag is set, then upon the execution of an ADC *HL, BC* instruction, HL contains 765Ah.

## SBC HL, ss

### Operation

$HL \leftarrow HL - ss - CY$

### Op Code

SBC

### Operands

*HL, ss*

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 0 | 1 | s | s | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |    |

### Description

The contents of the register pair *ss* (any of register pairs BC, DE, HL, or SP) and the Carry Flag (C flag in the F Register) are subtracted from the contents of register pair HL, and the result is stored in HL. In the assembled object code, operand *ss* is specified as follows:

| Register<br>Pair | ss |
|------------------|----|
| BC               | 00 |
| DE               | 01 |
| HL               | 10 |
| SP               | 11 |

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 15 (4, 4, 4, 3) | 3.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set if borrow from bit 12; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is set if overflow; otherwise, it is reset.

N is set.

C is set if borrow; otherwise, it is reset.

### **Example**

If the HL register pair contains 9999h, register pair DE contains 1111h, and the Carry flag is set, then upon the execution of an `SBC HL, DE` instruction, HL contains 8887h.

## ADD IX, pp

### Operation

$IX \leftarrow IX + pp$

### Op Code

ADD

### Operands

*IX, pp*

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | DD |
| 0 | 0 | p | p | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 |    |

### Description

The contents of register pair *pp* (any of register pairs BC, DE, IX, or SP) are added to the contents of Index Register IX, and the results are stored in IX. In the assembled object code, operand *pp* is specified as follows:

| Register<br>Pair | ss |
|------------------|----|
| BC               | 00 |
| DE               | 01 |
| IX               | 10 |
| SP               | 11 |

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 15 (4, 4, 4, 3) | 3.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is not affected.

Z is not affected.

H is set if carry from bit 11; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is not affected.



N is reset.

C is set if carry from bit 15; otherwise, it is reset.

### **Example**

If Index Register IX contains 333h and register pair BC contains 555h, then upon the execution of an `ADD IX, BC` instruction, IX contains 888h.

## ADD IY, rr

### Operation

$IY \leftarrow IY + rr$

### Op Code

ADD

### Operands

*IY, rr*

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | FD |
| 0 | 0 | r | r | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 |    |

### Description

The contents of register pair *rr* (any of register pairs BC, DE, IY, or SP) are added to the contents of Index Register IY, and the result is stored in IY. In the assembled object code, the *rr* operand is specified as follows:

| Register Pair | ss |
|---------------|----|
| BC            | 00 |
| DE            | 01 |
| IY            | 10 |
| SP            | 11 |

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 15 (4, 4, 4, 3) | 3.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is not affected.

Z is not affected.

H is set if carry from bit 11; otherwise, it is reset.

P/V is not affected.

N is reset.

C is set if carry from bit 15; otherwise, it is reset.

### **Example**

If Index Register *IY* contains 333h and register pair *BC* contains 555h, then upon the execution of an *ADD IY, BC* instruction, *IY* contains 888h.

## INC *ss*

### Operation

$ss \leftarrow ss + 1$

### Op Code

INC

### Operand

*ss*

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | s | s | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

### Description

The contents of register pair *ss* (any of register pairs BC, DE, HL, or SP) are incremented. In the assembled object code, operand *ss* is specified as follows:

| Register Pair | <i>ss</i> |
|---------------|-----------|
| BC            | 00        |
| DE            | 01        |
| HL            | 10        |
| SP            | 11        |

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1        | 6        | 1.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the register pair contains 1000h, then upon the execution of an INC *HL* instruction, HL contains 1001h.

## INC IX

### Operation

$IX \leftarrow IX + 1$

### Op Code

INC

### Operand

*IX*

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | DD |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 23 |

### Description

The contents of Index Register IX are incremented.

| M Cycles | T States  | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------|------------|
| 2        | 10 (4, 6) | 2.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If Index Register IX contains the integer 3300h, then upon the execution of an INC *IX* instruction, Index Register IX contains 3301h.

## INC *IY*

### Operation

$IY \leftarrow IY + 1$

### Op Code

INC

### Operand

*IY*

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | FD |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 23 |

### Description

The contents of Index Register *IY* are incremented.

| M Cycles | T States  | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------|------------|
| 2        | 10 (4, 6) | 2.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the index register contains 2977h, then upon the execution of an INC *IY* instruction, Index Register *IY* contains 2978h.

## DEC *ss*

### Operation

$ss \leftarrow ss - 1$

### Op Code

DEC

### Operand

*ss*

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | s | s | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

### Description

The contents of register pair *ss* (any of the register pairs BC, DE, HL, or SP) are decremented. In the assembled object code, operand *ss* is specified as follows:

| Register Pair | <i>ss</i> |
|---------------|-----------|
| BC            | 00        |
| DE            | 01        |
| HL            | 10        |
| SP            | 11        |

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1        | 6        | 1.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If register pair HL contains 1001h, then upon the execution of an DEC *HL* instruction, HL contains 1000h.

## DEC IX

### Operation

$IX \leftarrow IX - 1$

### Op Code

DEC

### Operand

*IX*

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | DD |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2B |

### Description

The contents of Index Register IX are decremented.

| M Cycles | T States  | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------|------------|
| 2        | 10 (4, 6) | 2.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If Index Register IX contains 2006h, then upon the execution of a DEC *IX* instruction, Index Register IX contains 2005h.



## DEC *IY*

### Operation

$IY \leftarrow IY - 1$

### Op Code

DEC

### Operand

*IY*

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | FD |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2B |

### Description

The contents of Index Register *IY* are decremented.

| M Cycles | T States  | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------|------------|
| 2        | 10 (4, 6) | 2.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If Index Register *IY* contains 7649h, then upon the execution of a DEC *IY* instruction, Index Register *IY* contains 7648h.

## Rotate and Shift Group

The following rotate and shift group instructions are each described in this section. Simply click to jump to an instruction's description to learn more.

[RLCA](#) – see page 205

[RLA](#) – see page 207

[RRCA](#) – see page 209

[RRA](#) – see page 211

[RLC r](#) – see page 213

[RLC \(HL\)](#) – see page 215

[RLC \(IX+d\)](#) – see page 217

[RLC \(IY+d\)](#) – see page 219

[RL m](#) – see page 221

[RRC m](#) – see page 224

[RR m](#) – see page 227

[SLA m](#) – see page 230

[SRA m](#) – see page 233

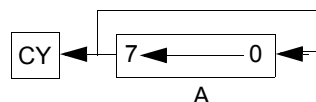
[SRL m](#) – see page 236

[RLD](#) – see page 238

[RRD](#) – see page 240

# RLCA

## Operation

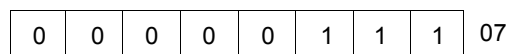


## Op Code

RLCA

## Operands

None.



## Description

The contents of the Accumulator (Register A) are rotated left 1 bit position. The sign bit (bit 7) is copied to the Carry flag and also to bit 0. Bit 0 is the least-significant bit.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1        | 4        | 1.00       |

## Condition Bits Affected

S is not affected.

Z is not affected.

H is reset.

P/V is not affected.

N is reset.

C is data from bit 7 of Accumulator.

### Example

The Accumulator contains the following data:

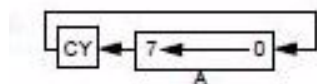
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

Upon the execution of an RLCA instruction, the Accumulator and Carry flag contains:

| C | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |

# RLA

## Operation



## Op Code

RLA

## Operands

None.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 17 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

## Description

The contents of the Accumulator (Register A) are rotated left 1 bit position through the Carry flag. The previous contents of the Carry flag are copied to bit 0. Bit 0 is the least-significant bit.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1        | 4        | 1.00       |

## Condition Bits Affected

Condition Bits Affected.

S is not affected.

Z is not affected.

H is reset.

P/V is not affected.

N is reset.

C is data from bit 7 of Accumulator.

### Example

The Accumulator and the Carry flag contains the following data:

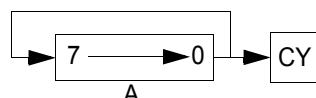
| C | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 |

Upon the execution of an RLA instruction, the Accumulator and the Carry flag contains:

| C | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |

## RRCA

### Operation

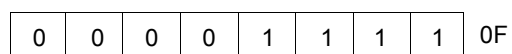


### Op Code

RRCA

### Operands

None.



### Description

The contents of the Accumulator (Register A) are rotated right 1 bit position. Bit 0 is copied to the Carry flag and also to bit 7. Bit 0 is the least-significant bit.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1        | 4        | 1.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is not affected.

Z is not affected.

H is reset.

P/V is not affected.

N is reset.

C is data from bit 0 of Accumulator.

### Example

The Accumulator contains the following data.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |

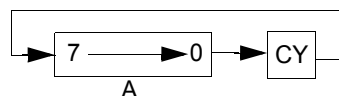
Upon the execution of an RRCA instruction, the Accumulator and the Carry flag now contain:

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | C |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |



# RRA

## Operation



## Op Code

RRA

## Operands

None.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

## Description

The contents of the Accumulator (Register A) are rotated right 1 bit position through the Carry flag. The previous contents of the Carry flag are copied to bit 7. Bit 0 is the least-significant bit.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1        | 4        | 1.00       |

## Condition Bits Affected

S is not affected.

Z is not affected.

H is reset.

P/V is not affected.

N is reset.

C is data from bit 0 of Accumulator.

### Example

The Accumulator and the Carry Flag contain the following data:

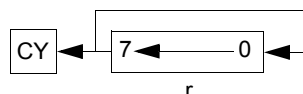
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | C |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |

Upon the execution of an RRA instruction, the Accumulator and the Carry flag now contain:

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | C |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |

# RLC *r*

## Operation

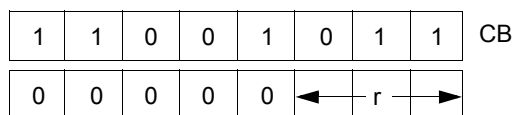


## Op Code

RLC

## Operand

*r*



## Description

The contents of register *r* are rotated left 1 bit position. The contents of bit 7 are copied to the Carry flag and also to bit 0. In the assembled object code, operand *r* is specified as follows:

| Register | r   | M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----|----------|----------|------------|
| B        | 000 | 2        | 8 (4, 4) | 2.00       |
| C        | 001 |          |          |            |
| D        | 010 |          |          |            |
| E        | 011 |          |          |            |
| H        | 100 |          |          |            |
| L        | 101 |          |          |            |
| A        | 111 |          |          |            |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is reset.

P/V is set if parity even; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is data from bit 7 of source register.

### Example

Register *r* contains the following data.

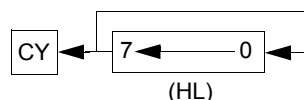
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

Upon the execution of an RLC *r* instruction, register *r* and the Carry flag now contain:

| C | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |

## RLC (HL)

### Operation



### Op Code

RLC

### Operand

(HL)

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | CB |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 06 |

### Description

The contents of the memory address specified by the contents of register pair HL are rotated left 1 bit position. The contents of bit 7 are copied to the Carry flag and also to bit 0. Bit 0 is the least-significant bit.

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 15 (4, 4, 4, 3) | 3.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is reset.

P/V is set if parity even; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is data from bit 7 of source register.

### Example

The HL register pair contains 2828h and the contents of memory location 2828h are:

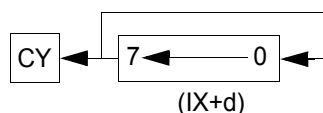
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

Upon the execution of an  $RLC(HL)$  instruction, memory location 2828h and the Carry flag now contain:

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| C | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |

## RLC ( $IX+d$ )

### Operation



### Op Code

RLC

### Operand

( $IX+d$ )

|       |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1     | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | DD |
| 1     | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | CB |
| ← d → |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| 0     | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 06 |

### Description

The contents of the memory address specified by the sum of the contents of Index Register  $IX$  and the two's-complement displacement integer,  $d$ , are rotated left 1 bit position. The contents of bit 7 are copied to the Carry flag and also to bit 0. Bit 0 is the least-significant bit.

| M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is reset.

P/V is set if parity even; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is data from bit 7 of source register.

### Example

Index Register IX contains 1000h and memory location 1022h contains the following data.

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

Upon the execution of an RLC ( $IX+2h$ ) instruction, memory location 1002h and the Carry flag now contain:

| C | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |





C is data from bit 7 of source register.

### Example

Index Register IY contains 1000h and memory location 1002h contain the following data:

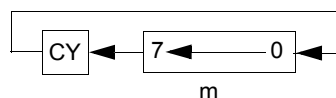
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

Upon the execution of an RLC ( $IY+2h$ ) instruction, memory location 1002h and the Carry flag now contain:

| C | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |

## RL *m*

### Operation



### Op Code

RL

### Operand

*m*

The *m* operand is any of *r*, (*HL*), (*IX+d*), or (*IY+d*), as defined for the analogous RLC instructions. In the assembled object code, the possible op code/operand combinations are specified as follows:

|               |   |   |   |   |   |                |   |   |    |
|---------------|---|---|---|---|---|----------------|---|---|----|
| RL <i>r</i> * | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0              | 1 | 1 | CB |
|               | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | ← <i>r</i> * → |   |   |    |
| RL (HL)       | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0              | 1 | 1 | CB |
|               | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1              | 1 | 0 | 16 |
| RL (IX+d)     | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1              | 0 | 1 | DD |
|               | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0              | 1 | 1 | CB |
|               | ← |   |   |   | d |                |   | → |    |
| RL (IY+d)     | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1              | 1 | 0 | 16 |
|               | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1              | 0 | 1 | FD |
|               | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0              | 1 | 1 | CB |
|               | ← |   |   |   | d |                |   | → |    |
|               | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1              | 1 | 0 | 16 |

*r* identifies registers B, C, D, E, H, L, or A assembled as follows in the object code field:

| Register | <i>r</i> |
|----------|----------|
| B        | 000      |
| C        | 001      |
| D        | 010      |
| E        | 011      |
| H        | 100      |
| L        | 101      |
| A        | 111      |

### Description

The contents of the *m* operand are rotated left 1 bit position. The contents of bit 7 are copied to the Carry flag, and the previous contents of the Carry flag are copied to bit 0.

| Instruction | M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|-------------|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| RL <i>r</i> | 2        | 8 (4, 4)              | 2.00       |
| RL (HL)     | 4        | 15(4, 4, 4, 3)        | 3.75       |
| RL (IX+d)   | 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |
| RL (IY+d)   | 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is reset.

P/V is set if parity even; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is data from bit 7 of source register.

### Example

The D Register and the Carry flag contain the following data.

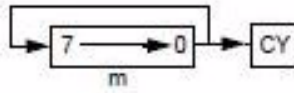
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| C | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

Upon the execution of an RL *D* instruction, the D Register and the Carry flag now contain:

| C | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |

## RRC *m*

### Operation



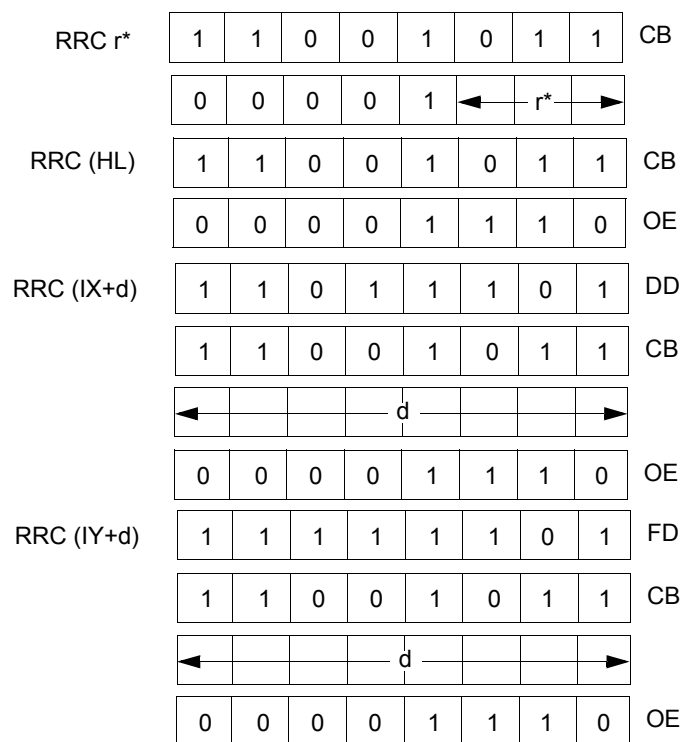
### Op Code

RRC

### Operand

*m*

The *m* operand is any of *r*, (*HL*), (*IX+d*), or (*IY+d*), as defined for the analogous RLC instructions. In the assembled object code, the possible op code/operand combinations are specified as follows:



$r$  identifies registers B, C, D, E, H, L, or A assembled as follows in the object code field:

| Register | $r$ |
|----------|-----|
| B        | 000 |
| C        | 001 |
| D        | 010 |
| E        | 011 |
| H        | 100 |
| L        | 101 |
| A        | 111 |

### Description

The contents of the  $m$  operand are rotated right 1 bit position. The contents of bit 0 are copied to the Carry flag and also to bit 7. Bit 0 is the least-significant bit.

| Instruction | M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|-------------|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| RRC r       | 2        | 8 (4, 4)              | 2.00       |
| RRC (HL)    | 4        | 15 (4, 4, 4, 3)       | 3.75       |
| RRC (IX+d)  | 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |
| RRC (IY+d)  | 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is reset.

P/V is set if parity even; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is data from bit 0 of source register.

### Example

Register A contains the following data.

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |

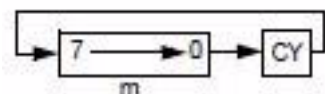
Upon the execution of an RRC A instruction, Register A and the Carry flag now contain:

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | C |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |



## ***RR m***

### **Operation**



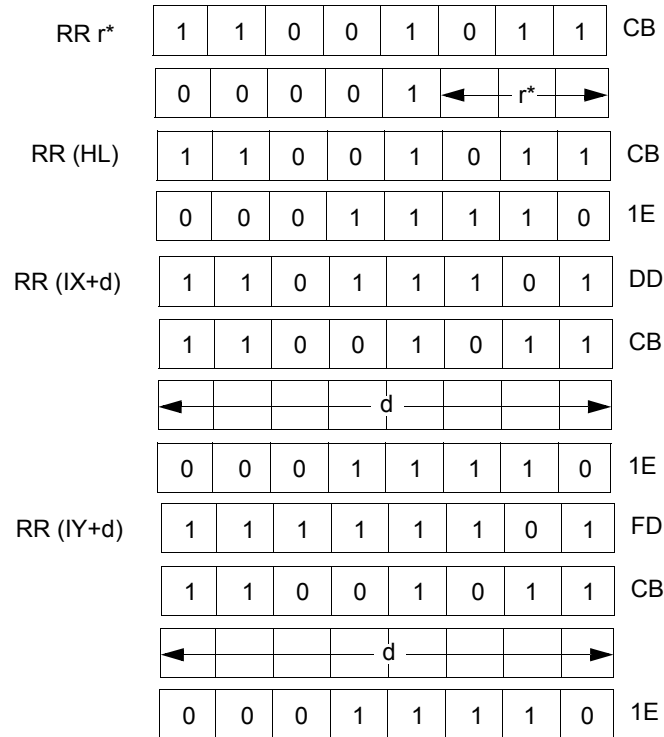
### **Op Code**

RR

### **Operand**

*m*

The *m* operand is any of *r*, (*HL*), (*IX+d*), or (*IY+d*), as defined for the analogous RLC instructions. In the assembled object code, the possible op code/operand combinations are specified as follows:



*r* identifies registers B, C, D, E, H, L, or A assembled as follows in the object code field:

| Register | r   |
|----------|-----|
| B        | 000 |
| C        | 001 |
| D        | 010 |
| E        | 011 |
| H        | 100 |
| L        | 101 |
| A        | 111 |

### Description

The contents of operand *m* are rotated right 1 bit position through the Carry flag. The contents of bit 0 are copied to the Carry flag and the previous contents of the Carry flag are copied to bit 7. Bit 0 is the least-significant bit.

| Instruction | M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|-------------|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| RR r        | 2        | 8 (4, 4)              | 2.00       |
| RR (HL)     | 4        | 15 (4, 4, 4, 3)       | 3.75       |
| RR (IX+d)   | 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |
| RR (IY+d)   | 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is reset.

P/V is set if parity even; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is data from bit 0 of source register.

### Example

The HL register pair contains 4343h and memory location 4343h and the Carry flag contain the following data.

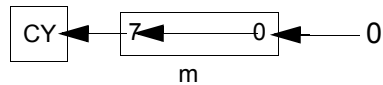
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | C |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |

Upon the execution of an RR (*HL*) instruction, location 4343h and the Carry flag now contain:

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | C |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |

## SLA $m$

### Operation



### Op Code

SLA

### Operand

$m$

The  $m$  operand is any of  $r$ , ( $HL$ ), ( $IX+d$ ), or ( $IY+d$ ), as defined for the analogous RLC instructions. In the assembled object code, the possible op code/operand combinations are specified as follows:

|                |         |   |   |   |   |           |   |   |    |
|----------------|---------|---|---|---|---|-----------|---|---|----|
| SLA $r^*$      | 1       | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0         | 1 | 1 | CB |
|                | 0       | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | ← $r^*$ → |   |   |    |
| SLA (HL)       | 1       | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0         | 1 | 1 | CB |
|                | 0       | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1         | 1 | 0 | 26 |
| SLA ( $IX+d$ ) | 1       | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1         | 0 | 1 | DD |
|                | 1       | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0         | 1 | 1 | CB |
|                | ← $d$ → |   |   |   |   |           |   |   |    |
|                | 0       | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1         | 1 | 0 | 26 |
| SLA ( $IY+d$ ) | 1       | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1         | 0 | 1 | FD |
|                | 1       | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0         | 1 | 1 | CB |
|                | ← $d$ → |   |   |   |   |           |   |   |    |
|                | 0       | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1         | 1 | 0 | 26 |

*r* identifies registers B, C, D, E, H, L, or A assembled as follows in the object code field:

| Register | <i>r</i> |
|----------|----------|
| B        | 000      |
| C        | 001      |
| D        | 010      |
| E        | 011      |
| H        | 100      |
| L        | 101      |
| A        | 111      |

### Description

An arithmetic shift left 1 bit position is performed on the contents of operand *m*. The contents of bit 7 are copied to the Carry flag. Bit 0 is the least-significant bit.

| Instruction  | M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|--------------|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| SLA <i>r</i> | 2        | 8 (4, 4)              | 2.00       |
| SLA (HL)     | 4        | 15 (4, 4, 4, 3)       | 3.75       |
| SLA (IX+d)   | 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |
| SLA (IY+d)   | 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is reset.

P/V is set if parity is even; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is data from bit 7.

### Example

Register L contains the following data.

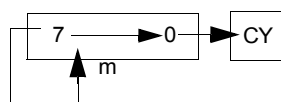
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |

Upon the execution of an SLA *L* instruction, Register L and the Carry flag now contain:

| C | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |

## SRA *m*

### Operation



### Op Code

SRA

### Operand

*m*

The *m* operand is any of *r*, (*HL*), (*IX+d*), or (*IY+d*), as defined for the analogous RLC instructions. In the assembled object code, the possible op code/operand combinations are specified as follows:

|                |   |   |   |   |   |                |   |   |    |
|----------------|---|---|---|---|---|----------------|---|---|----|
| SRA <i>r</i> * | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0              | 1 | 1 | CB |
|                | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ← <i>r</i> * → |   |   |    |
| SRA (HL)       | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0              | 1 | 1 | CB |
|                | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1              | 1 | 0 | 2E |
| SRA (IX+d)     | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1              | 0 | 1 | DD |
|                | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0              | 1 | 1 | CB |
|                | ← |   |   |   | d |                |   | → |    |
|                | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1              | 1 | 0 | 2E |
| SRA (IY+d)     | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1              | 0 | 1 | FD |
|                | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0              | 1 | 1 | CB |
|                | ← |   |   |   | d |                |   | → |    |
|                | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1              | 1 | 0 | 2E |

*r* identifies registers B, C, D, E, H, L, or A assembled as follows in the object code field:

| Register | <i>r</i> |
|----------|----------|
| B        | 000      |
| C        | 001      |
| D        | 010      |
| E        | 011      |
| H        | 100      |
| L        | 101      |
| A        | 111      |

### Description

An arithmetic shift right 1 bit position is performed on the contents of operand *m*. The contents of bit 0 are copied to the Carry flag and the previous contents of bit 7 remain unchanged. Bit 0 is the least-significant bit.

| Instruction  | M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|--------------|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| SRA <i>r</i> | 2        | 8 (4, 4)              | 2.00       |
| SRA (HL)     | 4        | 15 (4, 4, 4, 3)       | 3.75       |
| SRA (IX+d)   | 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |
| SRA (IY+d)   | 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if result is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is reset.

P/V is set if parity is even; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is data from bit 0 of source register.

### Example

Index Register IX contains 1000h and memory location 1003h contains the following data.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

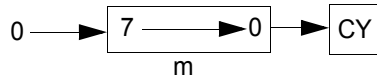


Upon the execution of an SRA ( $IX+3h$ ) instruction, memory location 1003h and the Carry flag now contain:

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | C |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

## SRL *m*

### Operation



### Op Code

SRL

### Operand

*m*

The operand *m* is any of *r*, (*HL*), (*IX+d*), or (*IY+d*), as defined for the analogous RLC instructions. In the assembled object code, the possible op code/operand combinations are specified as follows:

|                     |   |   |   |   |          |                |   |   |    |
|---------------------|---|---|---|---|----------|----------------|---|---|----|
| SRL <i>r</i> *      | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1        | 0              | 1 | 1 | CB |
|                     | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1        | ← <i>r</i> * → |   |   |    |
| SRL (HL)            | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1        | 0              | 1 | 1 | CB |
|                     | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1        | 1              | 1 | 0 | 3E |
| SRL ( <i>IX+d</i> ) | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1        | 1              | 0 | 1 | DD |
|                     | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1        | 0              | 1 | 1 | CB |
|                     | ← |   |   |   | <i>d</i> |                |   | → |    |
|                     | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1        | 1              | 1 | 0 | 3E |
| SRL ( <i>IY+d</i> ) | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1        | 1              | 0 | 1 | FD |
|                     | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1        | 0              | 1 | 1 | CB |
|                     | ← |   |   |   | <i>d</i> |                |   | → |    |
|                     | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1        | 1              | 1 | 0 | 3E |

$r$  identifies registers B, C, D, E, H, L, or A.

## Description

The contents of operand  $m$  are shifted right 1 bit position. The contents of bit 0 are copied to the Carry flag, and bit 7 is reset. Bit 0 is the least-significant bit.

| Instruction | M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|-------------|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| SRL $r$     | 2        | 8 (4, 4)              | 2.00       |
| SRL (HL)    | 4        | 15 (4, 4, 4, 3)       | 3.75       |
| SRL (IX+d)  | 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |
| SRL (IY+d)  | 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |

## Condition Bits Affected

S is reset.

Z is set if result is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is reset.

P/V is set if parity is even; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is data from bit 0 of source register.

## Example

Register B contains the following data.

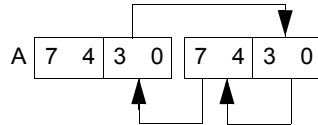
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

Upon the execution of an SRL  $B$  instruction, Register B and the Carry flag now contain:

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | C |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

## RLD

### Operation



### Op Code

RLD

### Operands

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 6F |

### Description

The contents of the low-order four bits (bits 3, 2, 1, and 0) of the memory location (HL) are copied to the high-order four bits (7, 6, 5, and 4) of that same memory location; the previous contents of those high-order four bits are copied to the low-order four bits of the Accumulator (Register A); and the previous contents of the low-order four bits of the Accumulator are copied to the low-order four bits of memory location (HL). The contents of the high-order bits of the Accumulator are unaffected.

---

► **Note:** (HL) refers to the memory location specified by the contents of the HL register pair.

---

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 18 (4, 4, 3, 4, 3) | 4.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if the Accumulator is negative after an operation; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if the Accumulator is 0 after an operation; otherwise, it is reset.

H is reset.

P/V is set if the parity of the Accumulator is even after an operation; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is not affected.

### Example

The HL register pair contains 5000h and the Accumulator and memory location 5000h contain the following data.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |             |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------|
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |             |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | Accumulator |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |         |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---------|
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |         |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | (5000h) |

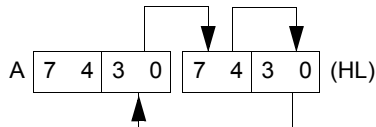
Upon the execution of an RLD instruction, the Accumulator and memory location 5000h now contain:

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |             |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------|
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |             |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | Accumulator |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |         |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---------|
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |         |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | (5000h) |

## RRD

### Operation



### Op Code

RRD

### Operands

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 67 |

### Description

The contents of the low-order four bits (bits 3, 2, 1, and 0) of memory location (HL) are copied to the low-order four bits of the Accumulator (Register A). The previous contents of the low-order four bits of the Accumulator are copied to the high-order four bits (7, 6, 5, and 4) of location (HL); and the previous contents of the high-order four bits of (HL) are copied to the low-order four bits of (HL). The contents of the high-order bits of the Accumulator are unaffected.

---

► **Note:** (HL) refers to the memory location specified by the contents of the HL register pair.

---

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 18 (4, 4, 3, 4, 3) | 4.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if the Accumulator is negative after an operation; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if the Accumulator is 0 after an operation; otherwise, it is reset.

H is reset.

P/V is set if the parity of the Accumulator is even after an operation; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is not affected.

### Example

The HL register pair contains 5000h and the Accumulator and memory location 5000h contain the following data.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |             |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------|
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |             |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | Accumulator |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |         |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---------|
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |         |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | (5000h) |

Upon the execution of an RRD instruction, the Accumulator and memory location 5000h now contain:

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |             |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------|
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |             |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Accumulator |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |         |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---------|
| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |         |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | (5000h) |

## Bit Set, Reset, and Test Group

The following bit set, reset, and test group instructions are each described in this section. Simply click to jump to an instruction's description to learn more.

[BIT b,r](#) – see page 243

[BIT b,\(HL\)](#) – see page 245

[BIT b,\(IX+d\)](#) – see page 247

[BIT b,\(IY+d\)](#) – see page 249

[SET b,r](#) – see page 251

[SET b,\(HL\)](#) – see page 253

[SET b,\(IX+d\)](#) – see page 255

[SET b,\(IY+d\)](#) – see page 257

[RES b,m](#) – see page 259



## BIT *b, r*

### Operation

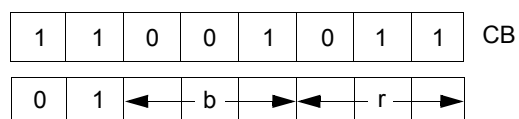
$$Z \leftarrow \overline{rb}$$

### Op Code

BIT

### Operands

*b, r*



### Description

This instruction tests bit *b* in register *r* and sets the Z flag accordingly. In the assembled object code, operands *b* and *r* are specified as follows:

| Bit Tested | <i>b</i> | Register | <i>r</i> |
|------------|----------|----------|----------|
| 0          | 000      | B        | 000      |
| 1          | 001      | C        | 001      |
| 2          | 010      | D        | 010      |
| 3          | 011      | E        | 011      |
| 4          | 100      | H        | 100      |
| 5          | 101      | L        | 101      |
| 6          | 110      | A        | 111      |
| 7          | 111      |          |          |

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 8 (4, 4) | 4.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is unknown.

Z is set if specified bit is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set.

P/V is unknown.

N is reset.

C is not affected.

### **Example**

If bit 2 in Register B contains 0, then upon the execution of a BIT 2, *B* instruction, the Z flag in the F Register contains 1, and bit 2 in Register B remains at 0. Bit 0 in Register B is the least-significant bit.

## BIT b, (HL)

### Operation

$Z \leftarrow (HL)b$

### Op Code

BIT

### Operands

*b*, (HL)

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | CB |
| 0 | 1 |   | b |   | 1 | 1 | 0 |    |

### Description

This instruction tests bit *b* in the memory location specified by the contents of the HL register pair and sets the Z flag accordingly. In the assembled object code, operand *b* is specified as follows:

| Bit Tested | b   |
|------------|-----|
| 0          | 000 |
| 1          | 001 |
| 2          | 010 |
| 3          | 011 |
| 4          | 100 |
| 5          | 101 |
| 6          | 110 |
| 7          | 111 |

| M Cycles | T States       | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------------|------------|
| 3        | 12 (4, 4, 4) 4 | 3.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is unknown.

Z is set if specified bit is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set.

P/V is unknown.

H is reset.

C is not affected.

### **Example**

If the HL register pair contains 4444h, and bit 4 in the memory location 444h contains 1, then upon the execution of a BIT 4, (HL) instruction, the Z flag in the F Register contains 0, and bit 4 in memory location 4444h remains at 1. Bit 0 in memory location 4444h is the least-significant bit.

## BIT *b*, (*IX+d*)

### Operation

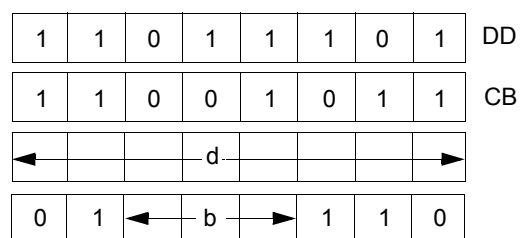
$$Z \leftarrow \overline{(\overline{IX+d})b}$$

### Op Code

BIT

### Operands

*b*, (*IX+d*)



### Description

This instruction tests bit *b* in the memory location specified by the contents of register pair *IX* combined with the two's complement displacement *d* and sets the *Z* flag accordingly. In the assembled object code, operand *b* is specified as follows:

| Bit Tested | b   |
|------------|-----|
| 0          | 000 |
| 1          | 001 |
| 2          | 010 |
| 3          | 011 |
| 4          | 100 |
| 5          | 101 |
| 6          | 110 |
| 7          | 111 |

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 20 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4) | 5.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is unknown.

Z is set if specified bit is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set.

P/V is unknown.

N is reset.

C is not affected.

### Example

If Index Register IX contains 2000h and bit 6 in memory location 2004h contains 1, then upon the execution of a BIT 6, ( $IX+4h$ ) instruction, the Z flag in the F Register contains a 0 and bit 6 in memory location 2004h still contains a 1. Bit 0 in memory location 2004h is the least-significant bit.

## BIT $b$ , ( $IY+d$ )

### Operation

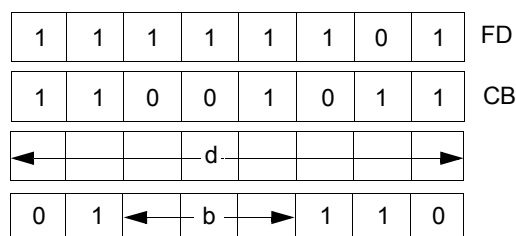
$$Z \leftarrow \overline{(IY+d)_b}$$

### Op Code

BIT

### Operands

$b$ , ( $IY+d$ )



### Description

This instruction tests bit  $b$  in the memory location specified by the contents of register pair  $IY$  combined with the two's complement displacement  $d$  and sets the  $Z$  flag accordingly. In the assembled object code, operand  $b$  is specified as follows.

| Bit Tested | b   |
|------------|-----|
| 0          | 000 |
| 1          | 001 |
| 2          | 010 |
| 3          | 011 |
| 4          | 100 |
| 5          | 101 |
| 6          | 110 |
| 7          | 111 |

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 20 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4) | 5.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is unknown.

Z is set if specified bit is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is set.

P/V is unknown.

H is reset.

C is not affected.

### Example

If Index Register contains 2000h and bit 6 in memory location 2004h contains a 1, then upon the execution of a BIT 6, ( $IX+4h$ ) instruction, the Z flag and the F Register still contains a 0, and bit 6 in memory location 2004h still contains a 1. Bit 0 in memory location 2004h is the least-significant bit.



## SET *b, r*

### Operation

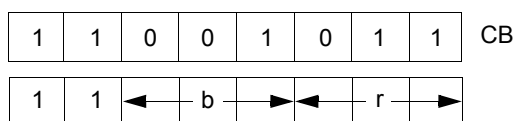
$rb \leftarrow 1$

### Op Code

SET

### Operands

*b, r*



### Description

Bit *b* in register *r* (any of registers B, C, D, E, H, L, or A) is set. In the assembled object code, operands *b* and *r* are specified as follows:

| Bit | <i>b</i> | Register | <i>r</i> |
|-----|----------|----------|----------|
| 0   | 000      | B        | 000      |
| 1   | 001      | C        | 001      |
| 2   | 010      | D        | 010      |
| 3   | 011      | E        | 011      |
| 4   | 100      | H        | 100      |
| 5   | 101      | L        | 101      |
| 6   | 110      | A        | 110      |
| 7   | 111      |          |          |

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 8 (4, 4) | 2.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

Upon the execution of a SET *4, A* instruction, bit 4 in Register A is set. Bit 0 is the least-significant bit.

## SET b, (HL)

### Operation

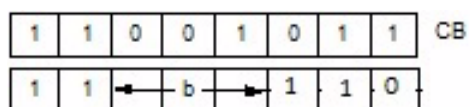
(HL)b ← 1

### Op Code

SET

### Operands

b, (HL)



### Description

Bit b in the memory location addressed by the contents of register pair HL is set. In the assembled object code, operand b is specified as follows:

| Bit Tested | b   |
|------------|-----|
| 0          | 000 |
| 1          | 001 |
| 2          | 010 |
| 3          | 011 |
| 4          | 100 |
| 5          | 101 |
| 6          | 110 |
| 7          | 111 |

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 15 (4, 4, 4, 3) | 3.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the HL register pair contains 3000h, then upon the execution of a SET 4, (*HL*) instruction, bit 4 in memory location 3000h is 1. Bit 0 in memory location 3000h is the least-significant bit.

## SET *b*, (*IX+d*)

### Operation

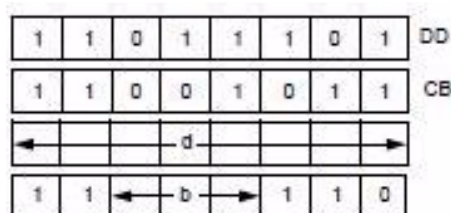
$(IX+d)b \leftarrow 1$

### Op Code

SET

### Operands

*b*, (*IX+d*)



### Description

Bit *b* in the memory location addressed by the sum of the contents of the IX register pair and the two's complement integer *d* is set. In the assembled object code, operand *b* is specified as follows:

| Bit Tested | <i>b</i> |
|------------|----------|
| 0          | 000      |
| 1          | 001      |
| 2          | 010      |
| 3          | 011      |
| 4          | 100      |
| 5          | 101      |
| 6          | 110      |
| 7          | 111      |

| M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the index register contains 2000h, then upon the execution of a SET 0, ( $IX + 3h$ ) instruction, bit 0 in memory location 2003h is 1. Bit 0 in memory location 2003h is the least-significant bit.

## SET b, (IY+d)

### Operation

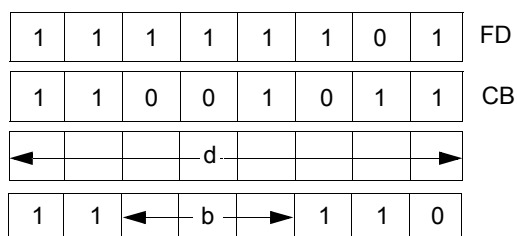
$(IY + d) b \leftarrow 1$

### Op Code

SET

### Operands

$b, (IY + d)$



### Description

Bit  $b$  in the memory location addressed by the sum of the contents of the IY register pair and the two's complement displacement  $d$  is set. In the assembled object code, operand  $b$  is specified as follows:

| Bit Tested | b   |
|------------|-----|
| 0          | 000 |
| 1          | 001 |
| 2          | 010 |
| 3          | 011 |
| 4          | 100 |
| 5          | 101 |
| 6          | 110 |
| 7          | 111 |

| M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If Index Register IY contains 2000h, then upon the execution of a Set 0, ( $IY+3h$ ) instruction, bit 0 in memory location 2003h is 1. Bit 0 in memory location 2003h is the least-significant bit.



## RES b, m

### Operation

$sb \leftarrow 0$

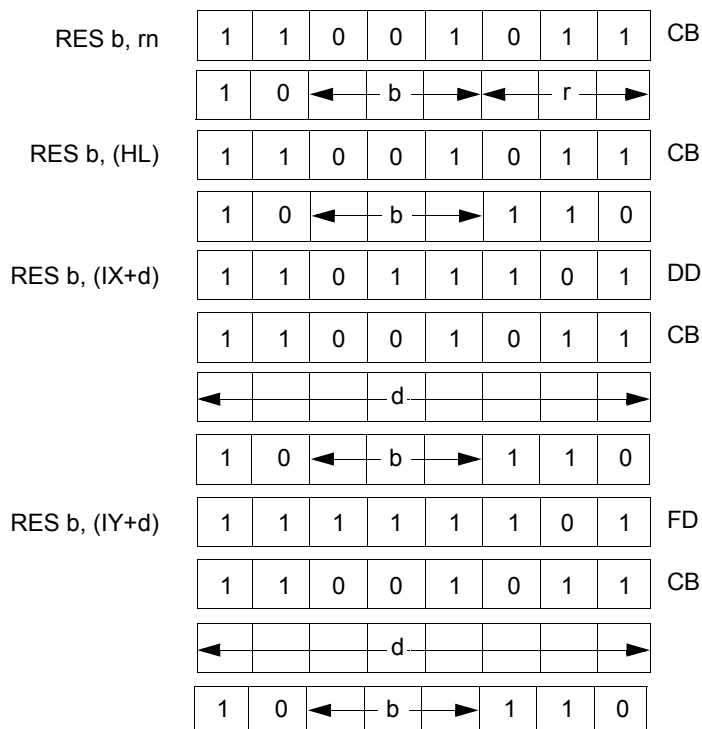
### Op Code

RES

### Operands

*b, m*

The *b* operand represents any bit (7 through 0) of the contents of the *m* operand, (any of *r*, (*HL*), (*IX+d*), or (*IY+d*)) as defined for the analogous SET instructions. These possible op code/operand combinations are assembled as follows in the object code:



| Bit | b   | Register | r   |
|-----|-----|----------|-----|
| 0   | 000 | B        | 000 |
| 1   | 001 | C        | 001 |
| 2   | 010 | D        | 010 |
| 3   | 011 | E        | 011 |
| 4   | 100 | H        | 100 |
| 5   | 101 | L        | 101 |
| 6   | 110 | A        | 111 |
| 7   | 111 |          |     |

### Description

Bit b in operand *m* is reset.

| Instruction | M Cycles | T States              | 4 MHz E.T. |
|-------------|----------|-----------------------|------------|
| RES r       | 4        | 8 (4, 4)              | 2.00       |
| RES (HL)    | 4        | 15 (4, 4, 4, 3)       | 3.75       |
| RES (IX+d)  | 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |
| RES (IY+d)  | 6        | 23 (4, 4, 3, 5, 4, 3) | 5.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

Upon the execution of a RES 6, *D* instruction, bit 6 in register 0 is reset. Bit 0 in the D Register is the least-significant bit.

## Jump Group

The following jump group instructions are each described in this section. Simply click to jump to an instruction's description to learn more.

[JP nn](#) – see page 262

[JP cc, nn](#) – see page 263

[JR e](#) – see page 265

[JR C, e](#) – see page 267

[JR NC, e](#) – see page 269

[JR Z, e](#) – see page 271

[JR NZ, e](#) – see page 273

[JP \(HL\)](#) – see page 275

[JP \(IX\)](#) – see page 276

[JP \(IY\)](#) – see page 277

[DJNZ, e](#) – see page 278

## JP nn

### Operation

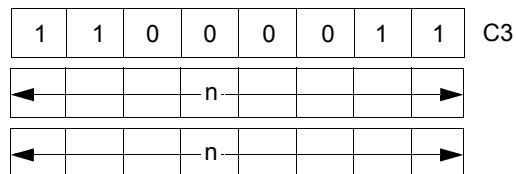
PC ← nn

### Op Code

JP

### Operand

nn




---

► **Note:** The first operand in this assembled object code is the low-order byte of a two-byte address.

---

### Description

Operand *nn* is loaded to register pair Program Counter (PC). The next instruction is fetched from the location designated by the new contents of the PC.

| M Cycles | T States     | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------|------------|
| 3        | 10 (4, 3, 3) | 2.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

## JP cc, nn

### Operation

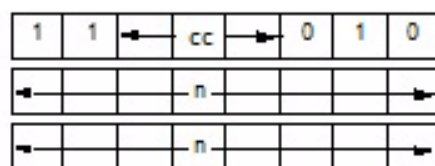
IF cc true, PC ← nn

### Op Code

JP

### Operands

cc, nn



The first *n* operand in this assembled object code is the low-order byte of a 2-byte memory address.

### Description

If condition *cc* is true, the instruction loads operand *nn* to register pair Program Counter (PC), and the program continues with the instruction beginning at address *nn*. If condition *cc* is false, the Program Counter is incremented as usual, and the program continues with the next sequential instruction. Condition *cc* is programmed as one of eight statuses that correspond to condition bits in the Flag Register (Register F). These eight statuses are defined in the following table, which specifies the corresponding *cc* bit fields in the assembled object code.

| cc  | Condition         | Relevant Flag |
|-----|-------------------|---------------|
| 000 | Non-Zero (NZ)     | Z             |
| 001 | Zero (Z)          | Z             |
| 010 | No Carry (NC)     | C             |
| 011 | Carry (C)         | C             |
| 100 | Parity Odd (PO)   | P/V           |
| 101 | Parity Even (PE)  | P/V           |
| 110 | Sign Positive (P) | S             |
| 111 | Sign Negative (M) | S             |

| <b>M Cycles</b> | <b>T States</b> | <b>4 MHz E.T.</b> |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 3               | 10 (4, 3, 3)    | 2.50              |

### **Condition Bits Affected**

None.

### **Example**

If the Carry flag (i.e., the C flag in F Register) is set and address 1520h contains 03h, then upon the execution of a JP C, 1520h instruction, the Program Counter contains 1520h and, on the next machine cycle, the CPD fetches byte 03h from address 1520h.

## JR e

### Operation

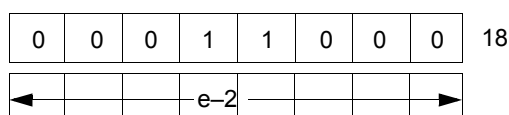
$PC \leftarrow PC + e$

### Op Code

JR

### Operand

*e*



### Description

This instruction provides for unconditional branching to other segments of a program. The value of displacement *e* is added to the Program Counter (PC) and the next instruction is fetched from the location designated by the new contents of the PC. This jump is measured from the address of the instruction op code and contains a range of -126 to +129 bytes. The assembler automatically adjusts for the twice incremented PC.

| M Cycles | T States     | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------|------------|
| 3        | 12 (4, 3, 5) | 3.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

To jump forward five locations from address 480, the following assembly language statement is used:

```
JR $+5
```

The resulting object code and final Program Counter value is shown in the following table:

| <b>Location</b> | <b>Instruction</b> |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| 480             | 18                 |
| 481             | 03                 |
| 482             | –                  |
| 483             | –                  |
| 484             | –                  |
| 485             | ← PC after jump    |



## JR C, e

### Operation

If C = 0, continue

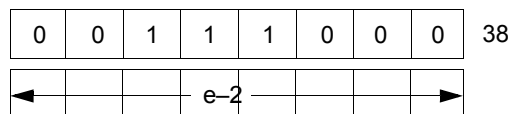
If C = 1, PC ← PC + e

### Op Code

JR

### Operands

C, e



### Description

This instruction provides for conditional branching to other segments of a program depending on the results of a test on the Carry Flag. If the flag = 1, the value of displacement *e* is added to the Program Counter (PC) and the next instruction is fetched from the location designated by the new contents of the PC. The jump is measured from the address of the instruction op code and contains a range of -126 to +129 bytes. The assembler automatically adjusts for the twice incremented PC.

If the flag = 0, the next instruction executed is taken from the location following this instruction. If condition is met

| M Cycles | T States     | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------|------------|
| 3        | 12 (4, 3, 5) | 3.00       |

If condition is not met:

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 7 (4, 3) | 1.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

The Carry flag is set and it is required to jump back four locations from 480. The assembly language statement is `JR C, $-4`

The resulting object code and final Program Counter value is shown in the following table:

| <b>Location</b> | <b>Instruction</b>           |
|-----------------|------------------------------|
| 47C             | ← PC after jump              |
| 47D             | –                            |
| 47E             | –                            |
| 47F             | –                            |
| 480             | 38                           |
| 481             | FA (two's<br>complement – 6) |

## JR NC, e

### Operation

If C = 1, continue

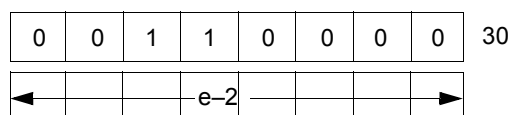
If C = 0,  $PC \leftarrow PC + e$

### Op Code

JR

### Operands

NC, e



### Description

This instruction provides for conditional branching to other segments of a program depending on the results of a test on the Carry Flag. If the flag is equal to 0, the value of displacement  $e$  is added to the Program Counter (PC) and the next instruction is fetched from the location designated by the new contents of the PC. The jump is measured from the address of the instruction op code and contains a range of  $-126$  to  $+129$  bytes. The assembler automatically adjusts for the twice incremented PC.

If the flag = 1, the next instruction executed is taken from the location following this instruction.

If the condition is met:

| M Cycles | T States     | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------|------------|
| 3        | 12 (4, 3, 5) | 3.00       |

If the condition is not met:

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 7        | 7 (4, 3) | 1.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

The Carry Flag is reset and it is required to repeat the jump instruction. The assembly language statement is `JR NC, $`

The resulting object code and Program Counter after the jump are:

| Location | Instruction        |
|----------|--------------------|
| 480      | 30 ← PC after jump |
| 481      | 00                 |

## JR Z, e

### Operation

If Z = 0, continue

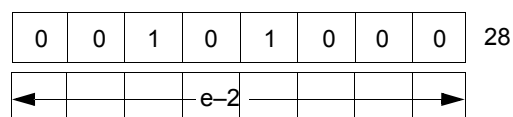
If Z = 1, PC ← PC + e

### Op Code

JR

### Operands

Z, e



### Description

This instruction provides for conditional branching to other segments of a program depending on the results of a test on the Zero Flag. If the flag = 1, the value of displacement *e* is added to the Program Counter (PC) and the next instruction is fetched from the location designated by the new contents of the PC. The jump is measured from the address of the instruction op code and contains a range of -126 to +129 bytes. The assembler automatically adjusts for the twice-incremented PC.

If the Zero Flag = 0, the next instruction executed is taken from the location following this instruction.

If this condition is met, the following data results:

| M Cycles | T States     | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------|------------|
| 3        | 12 (4, 3, 5) | 3.00       |

If this condition is not met, the following data results:

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 7 (4, 3) | 1.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

The Zero Flag is set and it is required to jump forward five locations from address 300. The following assembly language statement is used:

```
JR Z , $ + 5
```

The resulting object code and final Program Counter value are:

| Location | Instruction     |
|----------|-----------------|
| 300      | 28              |
| 301      | 03              |
| 302      | —               |
| 303      | —               |
| 304      | —               |
| 305      | ← PC after jump |

## JR NZ, e

### Operation

If  $Z = 1$ , continue

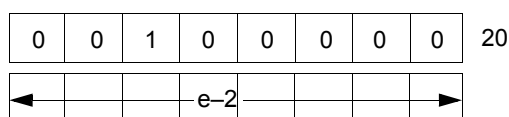
If  $Z = 0$ ,  $PC \leftarrow pc + e$

### Op Code

JR

### Operands

NZ, e



### Description

This instruction provides for conditional branching to other segments of a program depending on the results of a test on the Zero Flag. If the flag = 0, the value of displacement  $e$  is added to the Program Counter (PC) and the next instruction is fetched from the location designated by the new contents of the PC. The jump is measured from the address of the instruction op code and contains a range of -126 to +129 bytes. The assembler automatically adjusts for the twice incremented PC.

If the Zero Flag = 1, the next instruction executed is taken from the location following this instruction.

If the condition is met:

| M Cycles | T States     | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------|------------|
| 3        | 12 (4, 3, 5) | 3.00       |

If the condition is not met:

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 7 (4, 3) | 1.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

The Zero Flag is reset and it is required to jump back four locations from 480. The assembly language statement is `JR NZ, $-4`

The resulting object code and final Program Counter value is:

| Location | Instruction                  |
|----------|------------------------------|
| 47C      | ← PC after jump              |
| 47D      | —                            |
| 47E      | —                            |
| 47F      | —                            |
| 480      | 20                           |
| 481      | FA (two's<br>complement – 6) |



## JP (HL)

### Operation

PC ← HL

### Op Code

JP

### Operand

(HL)

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | E9 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

### Description

The Program Counter (PC) is loaded with the contents of the HL register pair. The next instruction is fetched from the location designated by the new contents of the PC.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1        | 4        | 1.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the Program Counter contains 1000h and the HL register pair contains 4800h, then upon the execution of a JP (HL) instruction, the Program Counter contains 4800h.

## JP (IX)

### Operation

pc ← IX

### Op Code

JP

### Operand

(IX)

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | DD |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | E9 |

### Description

The Program Counter (PC) is loaded with the contents of the IX register pair. The next instruction is fetched from the location designated by the new contents of the PC.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 8 (4, 4) | 2.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the Program Counter contains 1000h and the IX register pair contains 4800h, then upon the execution of a JP (IX) instruction, the Program Counter contains 4800h.

## JP (IY)

### Operation

PC ← IY

### Op Code

JP

### Operand

(IY)

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | FD |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | E9 |

### Description

The Program Counter (PC) is loaded with the contents of the IY register pair. The next instruction is fetched from the location designated by the new contents of the PC.

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 8 (4, 4) | 2.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the Program Counter contains 1000h and the IY register pair contains 4800h, then upon the execution of a JP (IY) instruction, the Program Counter contains 4800h.

## DJNZ, e

### Operation

$B \leftarrow B - 1$

If  $B = 0$ , continue

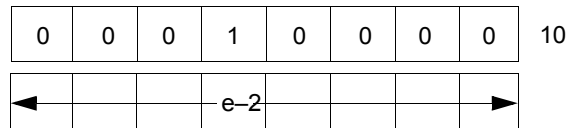
If  $B \neq 0$ ,  $PC \leftarrow PC + e$

### Op Code

DJNZ

### Operand

*e*



### Description

This instruction is similar to the conditional jump instructions except that a register value is used to determine branching. Register B is decremented, and if a nonzero value remains, the value of displacement *e* is added to the Program Counter (PC). The next instruction is fetched from the location designated by the new contents of the PC. The jump is measured from the address of the instruction op code and contains a range of -126 to +129 bytes. The assembler automatically adjusts for the twice incremented PC.

If the result of decrementing leaves B with a zero value, the next instruction executed is taken from the location following this instruction.

if  $B \neq 0$ :

| M Cycles | T States    | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-------------|------------|
| 3        | 13 (5,3, 5) | 3.25       |

If  $B = 0$ :

| M Cycles | T States | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 2        | 8 (5, 3) | 2.00       |

## Condition Bits Affected

None.

## Example

A typical software routine is used to demonstrate the use of the DJNZ instruction. This routine moves a line from an input buffer (INBUF) to an output buffer (OUTBUF). It moves the bytes until it finds a CR, or until it has moved 80 bytes, whichever occurs first.

```

LD      8, 80      ;Set up counter
LD      HL, Inbuf  ;Set up pointers
LD      DE, Outbuf

LOOP:   LID        A, (HL)    ;Get next byte from
                                ;input buffer
LD      (DE), A    ;Store in output buffer
CP      ODH        ;Is it a CR?
JR      Z, DONE    ;Yes finished
INC     HL         ;Increment pointers
INC     DE
DJNZ   LOOP        ;Loop back if 80
                                ;bytes have not
                                ;been moved

DONE:

```

## Call and Return Group

The following call and return group instructions are each described in this section. Simply click to jump to an instruction's description to learn more.

[CALL mn](#) – see page 281

[CALL cc, mn](#) – see page 283

[RET](#) – see page 285

[RET cc](#) – see page 286

[RETI](#) – see page 288

[RETN](#) – see page 290

[RST p](#) – see page 292



### Example

The Program Counter contains 1A47h, the Stack Pointer contains 3002h, and memory locations contain the following data.

| Location | Contents |
|----------|----------|
| 1A47h    | CDh      |
| 1A48h    | 35h      |
| 1A49h    | 21h      |

If an instruction fetch sequence begins, the 3-byte instruction CD 3521h is fetched to the CPU for execution. The mnemonic equivalent of this instruction is CALL 2135h. Upon the execution of this instruction, memory address 3001h contains 1Ah, address 3000h contains 4Ah, the Stack Pointer contains 3000h, and the Program Counter contains 2135h, thereby pointing to the address of the first op code of the next subroutine to be executed.



## CALL *cc, nn*

### Operation

IF *cc* true:  $(sp - 1) \leftarrow PCH$

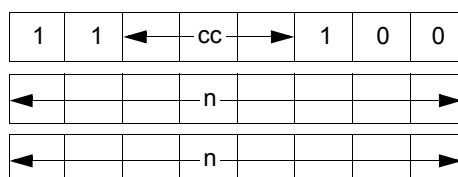
$(sp - 2) \leftarrow PCL, pc \leftarrow nn$

### Op Code

CALL

### Operands

*cc, nn*



The first of the two *n* operands in the assembled object code above is the least-significant byte of the 2-byte memory address.

### Description

If condition *cc* is true, this instruction pushes the current contents of the Program Counter (PC) onto the top of the external memory stack, then loads the operands *nn* to PC to point to the address in memory at which the first op code of a subroutine is to be fetched. At the end of the subroutine, a RETurn instruction can be used to return to the original program flow by popping the top of the stack back to PC. If condition *cc* is false, the Program Counter is incremented as usual, and the program continues with the next sequential instruction. The stack push is accomplished by first decrementing the current contents of the Stack Pointer (SP), loading the high-order byte of the PC contents to the memory address now pointed to by SP; then decrementing SP again, and loading the low-order byte of the PC contents to the top of the stack.

Because this process is a 3-byte instruction, the Program Counter was incremented by three before the push is executed.

Condition *cc* is programmed as one of eight statuses that corresponds to condition bits in the Flag Register (Register F). These eight statuses are defined in the following table, which also specifies the corresponding *cc* bit fields in the assembled object code.

| <b>cc</b> | <b>Condition</b>  | <b>Relevant Flag</b> |
|-----------|-------------------|----------------------|
| 000       | Non-Zero (NZ)     | Z                    |
| 001       | Zero (Z)          | Z                    |
| 010       | Non Carry (NC)    | C                    |
| 011       | Carry (C)         | Z                    |
| 100       | Parity Odd (PO)   | P/V                  |
| 101       | Parity Even (PE)  | P/V                  |
| 110       | Sign Positive (P) | S                    |
| 111       | Sign Negative (M) | S                    |

If *cc* is true:

| <b>M Cycles</b> | <b>T States</b>    | <b>4 MHz E.T.</b> |
|-----------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 5               | 17 (4, 3, 4, 3, 3) | 4.25              |

If *cc* is false:

| <b>M Cycles</b> | <b>T States</b> | <b>4 MHz E.T.</b> |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 3               | 10 (4, 3, 3)    | 2.50              |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

The C Flag in the F Register is reset, the Program Counter contains 1A47h, the Stack Pointer contains 3002h, and memory locations contain the following data.

| <b>Location</b> | <b>Contents</b> |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1A47h           | D4h             |
| 1448h           | 35h             |
| 1A49h           | 21h             |

If an instruction fetch sequence begins, the 3-byte instruction D43521h is fetched to the CPU for execution. The mnemonic equivalent of this instruction is CALL NC, 2135h. Upon the execution of this instruction, memory address 3001h contains 1Ah, address 3000h contains 4Ah, the Stack Pointer contains 3000h, and the Program Counter contains 2135h, thereby pointing to the address of the first op code of the next subroutine to be executed.

# RET

## Operation

$pCL \leftarrow (sp), pCH \leftarrow (sp+1)$

## Op Code

RET

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | C9 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

## Operands

None.

## Description

The byte at the memory location specified by the contents of the Stack Pointer (SP) Register pair is moved to the low-order eight bits of the Program Counter (PC). The SP is now incremented and the byte at the memory location specified by the new contents of this instruction is fetched from the memory location specified by the PC. This instruction is normally used to return to the main line program at the completion of a routine entered by a CALL instruction.

| M Cycles | T States     | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------|------------|
| 3        | 10 (4, 3, 3) | 2.50       |

## Condition Bits Affected

None.

## Example

The Program Counter contains 3535h, the Stack Pointer contains 2000h, memory location 2000h contains B5h, and memory location 2001h contains 18h. Upon the execution of a RET instruction, the Stack Pointer contains 2002h and the Program Counter contains 18B5h, thereby pointing to the address of the next program op code to be fetched.

## RET *cc*

### Operation

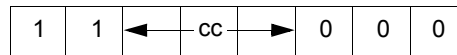
If *cc* true: PCL  $\leftarrow$  (sp), pCH  $\leftarrow$  (sp+1)

### Op Code

RET

### Operand

*cc*



### Description

If condition *cc* is true, the byte at the memory location specified by the contents of the Stack Pointer (SP) Register pair is moved to the low-order eight bits of the Program Counter (PC). The SP is incremented and the byte at the memory location specified by the new contents of the SP are moved to the high-order eight bits of the PC. The SP is incremented again. The next op code following this instruction is fetched from the memory location specified by the PC. This instruction is normally used to return to the main line program at the completion of a routine entered by a CALL instruction. If condition *cc* is false, the PC is simply incremented as usual, and the program continues with the next sequential instruction. Condition *cc* is programmed as one of eight status that correspond to condition bits in the Flag Register (Register F). These eight status are defined in the following table, which also specifies the corresponding *cc* bit fields in the assembled object code.

| <b>cc</b> | <b>Condition</b>  | <b>Relevant Flag</b> |
|-----------|-------------------|----------------------|
| 000       | Non-Zero (NZ)     | Z                    |
| 001       | Zero (Z)          | Z                    |
| 010       | Non Carry (NC)    | C                    |
| 011       | Carry (C)         | C                    |
| 100       | Parity Odd (PO)   | P/V                  |
| 101       | Parity Even (PE)  | P/V                  |
| 110       | Sign Positive (P) | S                    |
| 111       | Sign Negative (M) | S                    |

If *cc* is true, then the following data is returned:

| <b>M Cycles</b> | <b>T States</b> | <b>4 MHz E.T.</b> |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 3               | 11 (5, 3, 3)    | 2.75              |

If *cc* is false, then the following data is returned:

| <b>M Cycles</b> | <b>T States</b> | <b>4 MHz E.T.</b> |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1               | 5               | 1.25              |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

The S flag in the F Register is set, the Program Counter contains 3535h, the Stack Pointer contains 2000h, memory location 2000h contains B5h, and memory location 2001h contains 18h. Upon the execution of a RET *M* instruction, the Stack Pointer contains 2002h and the Program Counter contains 18B5h, thereby pointing to the address of the next program op code to be fetched.

## RETI

### Operation

Return from Interrupt

### Op Code

RETI

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 4D |

### Operands

None.

### Description

This instruction is used at the end of a maskable interrupt service routine to:

- Restore the contents of the Program Counter (analogous to the RET instruction)
- Signal an I/O device that the interrupt routine is completed. The RETI instruction also facilitates the nesting of interrupts, allowing higher priority devices to temporarily suspend service of lower priority service routines. However, this instruction does not enable interrupts that were disabled when the interrupt routine was entered. Before doing the RETI instruction, the enable interrupt instruction (EI) should be executed to allow recognition of interrupts after completion of the current service routine.

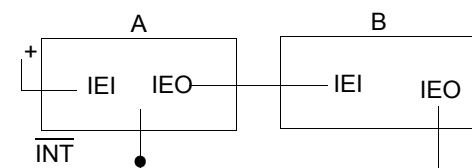
| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 14 (4, 4, 3, 3) | 3.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

Assume that there are two interrupting devices, A and B, connected in a daisy-chain configuration, with A having a higher priority than B.



B generates an interrupt and is acknowledged. The interrupt enable out, IEO, of B goes Low, blocking any lower priority devices from interrupting while B is being serviced. Then A generates an interrupt, suspending service of B. The IEO of A goes Low, indicating that a higher priority device is being serviced. The A routine is completed and a RETI is issued resetting the IEO of A, allowing the B routine to continue. A second RETI is issued on completion of the B routine and the IEO of B is reset (High), allowing lower-priority devices interrupt access.

## RETN

### Operation

Return from nonmaskable interrupt

### Op Code

RETN

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 45 |

### Operands

None.

### Description

This instruction is used at the end of a nonmaskable interrupts service routine to restore the contents of the Program Counter (analogous to the RET instruction). The state of IFF2 is copied back to IFF1 so that maskable interrupts are enabled immediately following the RETN if they were enabled before the nonmaskable interrupt.

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 14 (4, 4, 3, 3) | 3.50       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the Stack Pointer contains 1000h and the Program Counter contains 1A45h when a Nonmaskable Interrupt (NMI) signal is received, the CPU ignores the next instruction and instead restarts, returning to memory address 0066h. The current Program Counter contains 1A45h, which is pushed onto the external stack address of 0FFFh and 0FFEh, high-order byte first, and 0066h is loaded onto the Program Counter. That address begins an interrupt service routine that ends with a RETN instruction.

Upon the execution of a RETN instruction, the contents of the former Program Counter are popped off the external memory stack, low-order first, resulting in the Stack Pointer again containing 1000h. The program flow continues where it left off with an op code fetch to address 1A45h, order-byte first, and 0066h is loaded onto the Program Counter.



That address begins an interrupt service routine that ends with a RETN instruction. Upon the execution of a RETN instruction, the contents of the former Program Counter are popped off the external memory stack, low-order first, resulting in stack pointer contents of 1000h. The program flow continues where it left off with an op code fetch to address 1A45h.

## RST *p*

### Operation

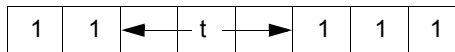
$(SP - 1) \leftarrow PCH, (SP - 2) \leftarrow PCL, PCH \leftarrow 0, PCL \leftarrow P$

### Op Code

RST

### Operand

*p*



### Description

The current Program Counter (PC) contents are pushed onto the external memory stack, and the Page 0 memory location assigned by operand *p* is loaded to the PC. Program execution then begins with the op code in the address now pointed to by PC. The push is performed by first decrementing the contents of the Stack Pointer (SP), loading the high-order byte of PC to the memory address now pointed to by SP, decrementing SP again, and loading the low-order byte of PC to the address now pointed to by SP. The Restart instruction allows for a jump to one of eight addresses indicated in the following table. The operand *p* is assembled to the object code using the corresponding T state.

Because all addresses are stored in Page 0 of memory, the high-order byte of PC is loaded with 00h. The number selected from the *p* column of the table is loaded to the low-order byte of PC.

| <b>p</b> | <b>t</b> |
|----------|----------|
| 00h      | 000      |
| 08h      | 001      |
| 10h      | 010      |
| 18h      | 011      |
| 20h      | 100      |
| 28h      | 101      |
| 30h      | 110      |
| 38h      | 111      |

| M Cycles | T States     | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------|------------|
| 3        | 11 (5, 3, 3) | 2.75       |

### Example

If the Program Counter contains 15B3h, then upon the execution of an RST 18h (object code 11011111) instruction, the PC contains 0018h as the address of the next fetched op code.

## Input and Output Group

The following input and output group instructions are each described in this section. Simply click to jump to an instruction's description to learn more.

[IN A, \(n\)](#) – see page 295

[IN r \(C\)](#) – see page 296

[INI](#) – see page 298

[INIR](#) – see page 300

[IND](#) – see page 302

[INDR](#) – see page 304

[OUT \(n\), A](#) – see page 306

[OUT \(C\), r](#) – see page 307

[OUTI](#) – see page 309

[OTIR](#) – see page 311

[OUTD](#) – see page 313

[OTDR](#) – see page 315

## IN A, (n)

### Operation

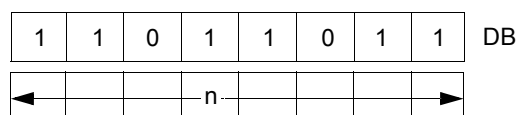
$A \leftarrow (n)$

### Op Code

IN

### Operands

A, (n)



### Description

The operand  $n$  is placed on the bottom half (A0 through A7) of the address bus to select the I/O device at one of 256 possible ports. The contents of the Accumulator also appear on the top half (A8 through A15) of the address bus at this time. Then one byte from the selected port is placed on the data bus and written to the Accumulator (Register A) in the CPU.

| M Cycles | T States     | 4 MHz LT. |
|----------|--------------|-----------|
| 3        | 11 (4, 3, 4) | 2.75      |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

The Accumulator contains 23h, and byte 7Bh is available at the peripheral device mapped to I/O port address 01h. Upon the execution of an IN A, (01h) instruction, the Accumulator contains 7Bh.

## IN *r* (C)

### Operation

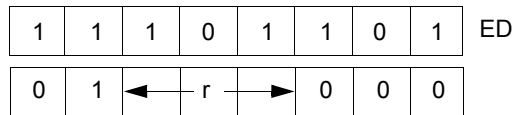
$r \leftarrow (C)$

### Op Code

IN

### Operands

*r*, (C)



### Description

The contents of Register C are placed on the bottom half (A0 through A7) of the address bus to select the I/O device at one of 256 possible ports. The contents of Register B are placed on the top half (A8 through A15) of the address bus at this time. Then one byte from the selected port is placed on the data bus and written to register *r* in the CPU. Register *r* identifies any of the CPU registers shown in the following table, which also indicates the corresponding 3-bit *r* field for each. The flags are affected, checking the input data.

| Register | r   |                                 |
|----------|-----|---------------------------------|
| Flag     | 110 | Undefined op code; set the flag |
| B        | 000 |                                 |
| C        | 001 |                                 |
| D        | 010 |                                 |
| E        | 011 |                                 |
| H        | 100 |                                 |
| L        | 101 |                                 |
| A        | 111 |                                 |

| M Cycles | T States     | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------|------------|
| 3        | 12 (4, 4, 4) | 3.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is set if input data is negative; otherwise, it is reset.

Z is set if input data is 0; otherwise, it is reset.

H is reset.

P/V is set if parity is even; otherwise, it is reset.

N is reset.

C is not affected.

### Example

Register C contains 07h, Register B contains 10h, and byte 7Bh is available at the peripheral device mapped to I/O port address 07h. Upon the execution of an *IN D, (C)* command, the D Register contains 7Bh.

## INI

### Operation

$(HL) \leftarrow (C)$ ,  $B \leftarrow B - 1$ ,  $HL \leftarrow HL + 1$

### Op Code

INI

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | A2 |

### Operands

None.

### Description

The contents of Register C are placed on the bottom half (A0 through A7) of the address bus to select the I/O device at one of 256 possible ports. Register B can be used as a byte counter, and its contents are placed on the top half (A8 through A15) of the address bus at this time. Then one byte from the selected port is placed on the data bus and written to the CPU. The contents of the HL register pair are then placed on the address bus and the input byte is written to the corresponding location of memory. Finally, the byte counter is decremented and register pair HL is incremented.

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 16 (4, 5, 3, 4) | 4.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is unknown.

Z is set if  $B - 1 = 0$ ; otherwise it is reset.

H is unknown.

P/V is unknown.

N is set.

C is not affected.



### Example

Register C contains 07h, Register B contains 10h, the HL register pair contains 1000h, and byte 7Bh is available at the peripheral device mapped to I/O port address 07h. Upon the execution of an INI instruction, memory location 1000h contains 7Bh, the HL register pair contains 1001h, and Register B contains 0Fh.

## INIR

### Operation

$(HL) \leftarrow (C)$ ,  $B \leftarrow B - 1$ ,  $HL \leftarrow HL + 1$

### Op Code

INIR

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | B2 |

### Operands

None.

### Description

The contents of Register C are placed on the bottom half (A0 through A7) of the address bus to select the I/O device at one of 256 possible ports. Register B is used as a byte counter, and its contents are placed on the top half (A8 through A15) of the address bus at this time. Then one byte from the selected port is placed on the data bus and written to the CPU. The contents of the HL register pair are placed on the address bus and the input byte is written to the corresponding location of memory. Then register pair HL is incremented, the byte counter is decremented. If decrementing causes B to go to 0, the instruction is terminated. If B is not 0, the Program Counter is decremented by two and the instruction repeated. Interrupts are recognized and two refresh cycles execute after each data transfer.

---

► **Note:** If B is set to 0 prior to instruction execution, 256 bytes of data are input.

---

If  $B \neq 0$ :

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 21 (4, 5, 3, 4, 5) | 5.25       |

If  $B = 0$ :

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 16 (4, 5, 3, 4) | 4.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is unknown.

Z is set.

H is unknown.

P/V is unknown.

N is set.

C is not affected.

### Example

Register C contains 07h, Register B contains 03h, the HL register pair contains 1000h, and the following sequence of bytes is available at the peripheral device mapped to I/O port of address 07h.

51h  
A9h  
03h

Upon the execution of an INIR instruction, the HL register pair contains 1003h, Register B contains a 0, and the memory locations contain the following data:

|       |     |
|-------|-----|
| 1000h | 51h |
| 1001h | A9h |
| 1002h | 03h |

## IND

### Operation

$(HL) \leftarrow (C), B \leftarrow B - 1, HL \leftarrow HL - 1$

### Op Code

IND

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | AA |

### Operands

None.

### Description

The contents of Register C are placed on the bottom half (A0 through A7) of the address bus to select the I/O device at one of 256 possible ports. Register B can be used as a byte counter, and its contents are placed on the top half (A8 through A15) of the address bus at this time. Then one byte from the selected port is placed on the data bus and written to the CPU. The contents of the HL register pair are placed on the address bus and the input byte is written to the corresponding location of memory. Finally, the byte counter and register pair HL are decremented.

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 16 (4, 5, 3, 4) | 4.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is unknown.

Z is set if  $B - 1 = 0$ ; otherwise, it is reset.

H is unknown.

P/V is unknown.

N is set.

C is not affected.

### Example

Register C contains 07h, Register B contains 10h, the HL register pair contains 1000h, and byte 7Bh is available at the peripheral device mapped to I/O port address 07h. Upon the execution of an IND instruction, memory location 1000h contains 7Bh, the HL register pair contains 0FFFh, and Register B contains 0Fh.

## INDR

### Operation

(HL) ← (C), B ← 131, HL ← HL1

### Op Code

INDR

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | BA |

### Operands

None.

### Description

The contents of Register C are placed on the bottom half (A0 through A7) of the address bus to select the I/O device at one of 256 possible ports. Register B is used as a byte counter, and its contents are placed on the top half (A8 through A15) of the address bus at this time. Then one byte from the selected port is placed on the data bus and written to the CPU. The contents of the HL register pair are placed on the address bus and the input byte is written to the corresponding location of memory. Then HL and the byte counter are decremented. If decrementing causes B to go to 0, the instruction is terminated. If B is not 0, the Program Counter is decremented by two and the instruction repeated. Interrupts are recognized and two refresh cycles are executed after each data transfer.

When B is set to 0 prior to instruction execution, 256 bytes of data are input.

If B ≠ 0:

| M Cycles | T States           | 4    | MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------|----------|
| 5        | 21 (4, 5, 3, 4, 5) | 5.25 |          |

If B = 0:

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 16 (4, 5, 3, 4) | 4.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is unknown.

Z is set.

H is unknown.

P/V is unknown.

N is set.

C is not affected.

### Example

Register C contains 07h, Register B contains 03h, the HL register pair contains 1000h and the following sequence of bytes is available at the peripheral device mapped to I/O port address 07h:

51h  
A9h  
03h

Upon the execution of an INDR instruction, the HL register pair contains 0FFDh, Register B contains a 0, and the memory locations contain the following data:

|       |     |
|-------|-----|
| 0FFEh | 03h |
| 0FFFh | A9h |
| 1000h | 51h |

## OUT (n), A

### Operation

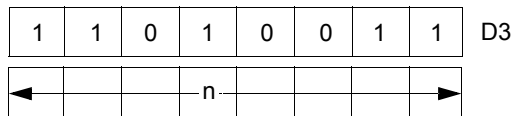
(n) ← A

### Op Code

OUT

### Operands

(n), A



### Description

The operand *n* is placed on the bottom half (A0 through A7) of the address bus to select the I/O device at one of 256 possible ports. The contents of the Accumulator (Register A) also appear on the top half (A8 through A15) of the address bus at this time. Then the byte contained in the Accumulator is placed on the data bus and written to the selected peripheral device.

| M Cycles | T States     | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------|------------|
| 3        | 11 (4, 3, 4) | 2.75       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If the Accumulator contains 23h, then upon the execution of an OUT (01h) instruction, byte 23h is written to the peripheral device mapped to I/O port address 01h.



## OUT (C), r

### Operation

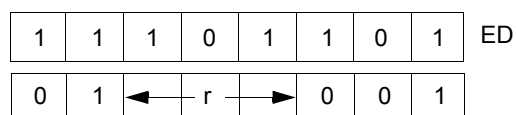
(C) ← r

### Op Code

OUT

### Operands

(C), r



### Description

The contents of Register C are placed on the bottom half (A0 through A7) of the address bus to select the I/O device at one of 256 possible ports. The contents of Register B are placed on the top half (A8 through A15) of the address bus at this time. Then the byte contained in register r is placed on the data bus and written to the selected peripheral device. Register r identifies any of the CPU registers shown in the following table, which also shows the corresponding three-bit r field for each that appears in the assembled object code.

| Register | r   |
|----------|-----|
| B        | 000 |
| C        | 001 |
| D        | 010 |
| E        | 011 |
| H        | 100 |
| L        | 101 |
| A        | 111 |

| M Cycles | T States     | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------|------------|
| 3        | 12 (4, 4, 4) | 3.00       |

### Condition Bits Affected

None.

### Example

If Register C contains 01h and the D Register contains 5Ah, then upon the execution of an OUT (C), D instruction, byte 5Ah is written to the peripheral device mapped to I/O port address 01h.

# OUTI

## Operation

$(C) \leftarrow (HL), B \leftarrow B - 1, HL \leftarrow HL + 1$

## Op Code

OUTI

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | A3 |

## Operands

None.

## Description

The contents of the HL register pair are placed on the address bus to select a location in memory. The byte contained in this memory location is temporarily stored in the CPU. Then, after the byte counter (B) is decremented, the contents of Register C are placed on the bottom half (A0 through A7) of the address bus to select the I/O device at one of 256 possible ports. Register B can be used as a byte counter, and its decremented value is placed on the top half (A8 through A15) of the address bus. The byte to be output is placed on the data bus and written to a selected peripheral device. Finally, the register pair HL is incremented.

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 16 (4, 5, 3, 4) | 4.00       |

## Condition Bits Affected

S is unknown.

Z is set if  $B - 1 = 0$ ; otherwise, it is reset.

H is unknown.

P/V is unknown.

N is set.

C is not affected.

### Example

If Register C contains 07h, Register B contains 10h, the HL register pair contains 1000h and memory address 1000h contains 59h, then upon the execution of an OUTI instruction, Register B contains 0Fh, the HL register pair contains 1001h, and byte 59h is written to the peripheral device mapped to I/O port address 07h.

## OTIR

### Operation

$(C) \leftarrow (HL), B \leftarrow B - 1, HL \leftarrow HL + 1$

### Op Code

OTIR

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | B3 |

### Operands

None.

### Description

The contents of the HL register pair are placed on the address bus to select a location in memory. The byte contained in this memory location is temporarily stored in the CPU. Then, after the byte counter (B) is decremented, the contents of Register C are placed on the bottom half (A0 through A7) of the address bus to select the I/O device at one of 256 possible ports. Register B can be used as a byte counter, and its decremented value is placed on the top half (A8 through A15) of the address bus at this time. Next, the byte to be output is placed on the data bus and written to the selected peripheral device. Then register pair HL is incremented. If the decremented B Register is not 0, the Program Counter (PC) is decremented by two and the instruction is repeated. If B has gone to 0, the instruction is terminated. Interrupts are recognized and two refresh cycles are executed after each data transfer.

---

► **Note:** When B is set to 0 prior to instruction execution, the instruction outputs 256 bytes of data.

---

If  $B \neq 0$ :

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 21 (4, 5, 3, 4, 5) | 5.25       |

If B = 0:

| <b>M Cycles</b> | <b>T States</b> | <b>4 MHz E.T.</b> |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 4               | 16 (4, 5, 3, 4) | 4.00              |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is unknown.

Z is set.

H is unknown.

P/V is unknown.

N is set.

C is not affected.

### Example

Register C contains 07h, Register B contains 03h, the HL register pair contains 1000h, and memory locations contain the following data.

|       |              |
|-------|--------------|
| 1000h | contains 51h |
| 1001h | contains A9h |
| 1002h | contains 03h |

Upon the execution of an OTIR instruction, the HL register pair contains 1003h, Register B contains a 0, and a group of bytes is written to the peripheral device mapped to I/O port address 07h in the following sequence:

51h  
 A9h  
 03h

# OUTD

## Operation

$(C) \leftarrow (HL), B \leftarrow B - 1, HL \leftarrow HL - 1$

## Op Code

OUTD

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | AB |

## Operands

None.

## Description

The contents of the HL register pair are placed on the address bus to select a location in memory. The byte contained in this memory location is temporarily stored in the CPU. Then, after the byte counter (B) is decremented, the contents of Register C are placed on the bottom half (A0 through A7) of the address bus to select the I/O device at one of 256 possible ports. Register B can be used as a byte counter, and its decremented value is placed on the top half (A8 through A15) of the address bus at this time. Next, the byte to be output is placed on the data bus and written to the selected peripheral device. Finally, the register pair HL is decremented.

| M Cycles | T States        | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|-----------------|------------|
| 4        | 16 (4, 5, 3, 4) | 4.00       |

## Condition Bits Affected

S is unknown.

Z is set if  $B - 1 = 0$ ; otherwise, it is reset.

H is unknown.

P/V is unknown.

N is set.

C is not affected.

### Example

If Register C contains 07h, Register B contains 10h, the HL register pair contains 1000h, and memory location 1000h contains 59h, then upon the execution of an OUTD instruction, Register B contains 0Fh, the HL register pair contains 0FFFh, and byte 59h is written to the peripheral device mapped to I/O port address 07h.



## OTDR

### Operation

$(C) \leftarrow (HL), B \leftarrow B - 1, HL \leftarrow HL - 1$

### Op Code

OTDR

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | ED |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | BB |

### Operands

None.

### Description

The contents of the HL register pair are placed on the address bus to select a location in memory. The byte contained in this memory location is temporarily stored in the CPU. Then, after the byte counter (B) is decremented, the contents of Register C are placed on the bottom half (A0 through A7) of the address bus to select the I/O device at one of 256 possible ports. Register B can be used as a byte counter, and its decremented value is placed on the top half (A8 through A15) of the address bus at this time. Next, the byte to be output is placed on the data bus and written to the selected peripheral device. Then, register pair HL is decremented and if the decremented B Register is not 0, the Program Counter (PC) is decremented by two and the instruction is repeated. If B has gone to 0, the instruction is terminated. Interrupts are recognized and two refresh cycles are executed after each data transfer.

---

► **Note:** When B is set to 0 prior to instruction execution, the instruction outputs 256 bytes of data.

---

If  $B \neq 0$ :

| M Cycles | T States           | 4 MHz E.T. |
|----------|--------------------|------------|
| 5        | 21 (4, 5, 3, 4, 5) | 5.25       |

If B = 0:

| <b>M Cycles</b> | <b>T States</b> | <b>4 MHz E.T.</b> |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 4               | 16 (4, 5, 3, 4) | 4.00              |

### Condition Bits Affected

S is unknown.

Z is set.

H is unknown.

P/V is unknown.

N is set.

C is not affected.

### Example

Register C contains 07h, Register B contains 03h, the HL register pair contains 1000h, and memory locations contain the following data.

|       |     |
|-------|-----|
| 0FFEh | 51h |
| 0FFFh | A9h |
| 1000h | 03h |

Upon the execution of an OTDR instruction, the HL register pair contain 0FFDh, Register B contains a 0, and a group of bytes is written to the peripheral device mapped to I/O port address 07h in the following sequence:

03h  
 A9h  
 51h

## ***Customer Support***

To share comments, get your technical questions answered, or report issues you may be experiencing with our products, please visit Zilog's Technical Support page at <http://support.zilog.com>.

To learn more about this product, find additional documentation, or to discover other facets about Zilog product offerings, please visit the Zilog Knowledge Base at <http://zilog.com/kb> or consider participating in the Zilog Forum at <http://zilog.com/forum>.

This publication is subject to replacement by a later edition. To determine whether a later edition exists, please visit the Zilog website at <http://www.zilog.com>.

